PREPARING RECORDS IN MICROCOMPUTER-BASED BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS

SECOND EDITION

Anne Di Lauro and Ed Brandon
The MIBIS Manual

Preparing Records in Microcomputer-Based
Bibliographic Information Systems

Anne Di Lauro
and
Ed Brandon

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE
Ottawa • Cairo • Dakar • Johannesburg • Montevideo • Nairobi • New Delhi • Singapore
Di Lauro, A.
Brandon, E.


UDC: 025.315:681.3.06

A microfiche edition is available.

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, or otherwise, without the prior permission of the International Development Research Centre.

IDRC Books endeavours to produce environmentally friendly publications. All paper used is recycled as well as recycleable. All inks and coatings are vegetable-based products.
# CONTENTS

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS ................................................................. vi
FOREWORD ........................................................................ vii
FOREWORD TO THE SECOND EDITION ................................ ix
HOW TO USE THIS MANUAL .................................................. 1
INTRODUCTION ......................................................................... 3
LIST OF FIELDS .................................................................. 13
INPUT SHEET ........................................................................ 17
FIELD-BY-FIELD GUIDE ...................................................... 19

ANNEXES

1. Guidelines for personal author names .................................. 131
2. Corporate Name Authority File rules .................................. 148
3. Guide to subject indexing and retrieval ................................. 165
4. Serials Authority File rules ................................................ 174
5. Guidelines for entering place names ..................................... 181
6. Guide to managing acquisitions fields ................................. 183
7. Abbreviations of names of months ....................................... 186
8. Language codes ................................................................ 187
9. Names of governments in the language of the government .... 188
10. ISO two-letter country codes ............................................. 195
11. Abbreviations of state and province names ......................... 198
12. Acronyms to be used in corporate body fields .................... 199
14. Correspondence with the Common Communication Format .... 211
15. Glossary ........................................................................ 216
16. Bibliography ................................................................... 220
17. Sample completed input sheets .......................................... 223
18. Data exchange procedures in a formal information network ... 241
19. Implementation using MICRO-ISIS with sample printed outputs .......................................................... 242
20. Implementation using INMAGIC ....................................... 318

INDEX .................................................................................. 341

DISKETTE CONTAINING SAMPLE MICRO-ISIS AND INMAGIC APPLICATIONS
I wish to thank all those who helped in the preparation of the manual. My special thanks go to:

- Maureen Sly, of the Centre’s Library, and Ed Brandon, of the Information Sciences and Systems Division, who followed the manual closely from start to finish, providing invaluable support, comments, and suggestions;
- The OECD Development Centre in Paris, for permission to base material in this manual on work already carried out for the IDIN Manual; and for giving me the opportunity to learn from the experiences of the IDIN group;
- Giampaolo Del Bigio, chief of the Unesco Division of Software Development and Applications, for permission to use Mini-micro CDS/ISIS; and
- In Florence, the Servizio Regionale per i Beni Librari, Regione Toscana, for permission to use its collection of works on librarianship, and for inviting me to participate in its meetings and courses for Mini-micro CDS/ISIS users.

Anne Di Lauro
FOREWORD

Since its creation in 1970, the International Development Research Centre (IDRC) has maintained a major program in Information Sciences. Through the projects that it supports, the Information Sciences Division seeks:

- to build indigenous capacity within developing countries to manage information and promote its use;
- to improve systems, services, and tools for managing and using information relevant to development research and change; and
- to encourage cooperation and information sharing.

Support is given to information activities in the areas reflecting the priorities of developing countries.

In the early years of its program, when awareness of information issues and the infrastructure to support information activities were weak in most developing countries, IDRC emphasized international and regional information systems as vehicles to promote models for building up local capacities and capabilities. This served as a means to facilitate information exchange, especially of information produced by developing countries themselves. IDRC was a key player in the establishment of a number of such development-information systems and models.

In 1981, IDRC hosted a Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, which was attended by representatives from the information units of the United Nations regional economic commissions, the Information Systems Unit of the United Nations Department of International Economic and Social Affairs, the Arab League, and the Bangladesh Institute of Development Studies. The participants agreed on a model record structure and field-by-field guidelines, based on their previous experience with development-information systems. They recommended that IDRC publish a manual incorporating the recommendations of the meeting, as well as guidelines related to authority files, indexing, and thesauri.

This resulted in the collection entitled Recommended Methods for Development-Information Systems. The first volume, Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems (IDRC-TS40e), contained guidelines for the structure and content of bibliographic records and was published in 1982. Volume two, Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems (IDRC-TS52e), was issued in 1984. It was originally envisaged that the Recommended Methods collection would have a third volume dealing with indexing and thesaurus construction. In the years since 1981, the need for this has been met to some degree by the emergence of a number of publications dealing with these subjects.

The Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems provided a model structure for information systems using mainframe or minicomputer technology in their automation, and has been widely used by the development-information community as a basis upon which guidelines for a number of information groups (regional networks, sectoral information systems) have been developed. However, since its publication, several developments have taken place that have led to the preparation of this companion volume.

Microcomputers are being increasingly used for bibliographic applications in the developing world. A number of software packages have been designed that are suitable for microcomputer-based bibliographic systems. As well, the capacity of microcomputers has increased to allow them to handle the special needs of bibliographic applications. This has contributed to a growing demand for assistance and advice in adapting microcomputer software packages to the needs of documentation centres and information networks in developing countries. This interest has originated from all sectors, and has not been limited to "development information" per se.
Over the years, a number of manuals and record structures have been developed to meet the needs of particular documentation centres and information systems that have adopted microcomputer technology. Recently, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) Development Centre, in its capacity as the technical focal point of the International Development Information Network (IDIN), contracted a consultant, Anne Di Lauro, to develop a bibliographic record structure and manual to be used by the IDIN participants. The result was the IDIN Manual for the Creation and Management of a Bibliographic Data Base using MICRO-ISIS. Although the IDIN Manual was written to respond to the needs of the IDIN network, IDRC felt that some of its content was of potential interest to a wider user community and could be helpful for any individual or organization establishing a bibliographic-information system using a microcomputer.

This idea provided the basis for the present manual, Manual for Preparing Records in Microcomputer-Based Bibliographic Information Systems (MIBIS).

Anne Di Lauro is well qualified to write this manual. As well as writing the IDIN Manual, she provided technical input to the Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems (MPRDIS) and was coauthor of Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems.

Readers will recognize the design and philosophy of MIBIS as being similar to that of MPRDIS. In addition, the present manual has been strongly influenced by the IDIN Manual, and in this regard, IDRC gratefully acknowledges the contribution of the OECD Development Centre. MIBIS is compatible with the Common Communication Format (CCF) and has taken into account the widespread use of the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules (AACR2) in developing countries.

MIBIS is not limited to information systems in any particular discipline nor to users of particular microcomputer software. It has used Unesco’s CDS/ISIS Mini-Micro Version 3.07 (hereafter referred to as MICRO-ISIS) as the “example” software for the proposed record structure, and also includes an annex on how the structure can be implemented on a second software package, INMAGIC.

The main part of MIBIS is a field-by-field guide containing rules for the selection and entry of data using the proposed record structure. Annexes include examples of completed input sheets, guidelines for building various types of authority files, guidelines for indexing and subject retrieval, a guide for acquisitions applications, data exchange procedures in a network, and details on implementations using MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC with sample outputs. A diskette containing the MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC record structures and supporting files, as well as a sample database, has also been included.

MIBIS is a generalized manual to be used by a wide audience, ranging from users of stand-alone systems to participants in international information networks. It is not intended to replace, but to complement, other manuals currently in existence. It can be used partially or in its entirety, depending on the needs of the particular user or information community. MIBIS is intended to be comprehensive but not overly complicated, and should not be daunting even to first-time users of microcomputer-based systems. Indeed, with the growing use of microcomputers for information management at all levels, it is hoped that MIBIS may assist these new users in making good use of the technology now in their hands, based on the experience of many others who have come before them.

Martha B. Stone
Director
Information Sciences Division
International Development Research Centre
This manual, first published in 1990, has proven to be a useful tool to guide managers of libraries and documentation centres in automating their operations. It has also served as a resource for courses on the use of MICRO-ISIS in libraries. An indication of its popularity is that the full print run of the first edition was distributed in less than 3 years.

During this time, several developments have taken place causing the manual to require updating. The software packages used, MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC, now exist in newer and more powerful versions; the political map of the world has changed considerably; and a new edition of the Macrothesaurus has been published. In addition, readers and users of this manual have offered suggestions for improvement. This second edition reflects these developments.

Minor changes were made to take advantage of new features in version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS, while more substantive changes were made to annex 20 to reflect the new structure of INMAGIC Plus, the updated version of INMAGIC. Care has been taken to ensure complete compatibility with the original design. Those who have developed applications based on the first edition can continue to use these systems. They may wish to update some of the display formats and reports with those provided on the diskette accompanying this second edition.

Country names and codes have been updated to include the latest information available from the ISO 3166 Maintenance Agency Secretariat in Berlin.

The Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development has been modified and expanded, resulting in the publication of a fourth edition. As required, descriptors found in the text of the manual, and those in the sample database have been updated to use terms in the new edition.

The major updates are:

- addition of a field for accession number;
- improved display format for bibliographic records;
- redesign of purchase order and order claim reports; and
- addition of tables for Heurisko, a new search interface for MICRO-ISIS.

---

1 For INMAGIC applications, five field labels have been changed. Refer to Annex 19, Section III — Installation on your microcomputer for information on converting your application.


First, read the Introduction, which is essential to an understanding of the background and rationale of the database design.

Then, look at the List of Fields and the Field-by-Field Guide, which are the core of the manual. They are both arranged numerically by field tag.

The Annexes are an important adjunct to the Field-by-Field Guide, providing detailed rules and information that apply to more than one field.

The Index provides another access point to the information in the text.

Then, decide how you will implement the manual by reading the section below on Options and answering the questions it asks.

**OPTIONS**

Because the aim of the manual is to provide a database design that can be applied to a variety of situations, from stand-alone information systems to participants in a formal information network, it includes all of the data elements and rules that any documentation centre might need. Individual documentation centres might need to use all of the fields and subfields and rules provided in the manual, or only some.

Optional rules are provided for some fields in the Field-by-Field Guide and in some of the annexes. They are clearly marked “OPTION”.

Optional fields are identified in the List of Fields on pages 13–16. In the column titled “Use”, the letters E (Essential), M (Mandatory), and O (Optional) indicate those fields and subfields that should be used by all documentation centres and those that should only be adopted if needed by a particular documentation centre.

Fields marked as being Essential must be entered in each bibliographic record.

Fields marked as being Mandatory should be defined by all documentation centres, but data is only entered in these fields if the information required applies to the item being catalogued.

Individual documentation centres may choose which of the Optional fields they wish to adopt. Fields that are optional in this manual may be defined as essential or mandatory in a particular information system.

Here are some questions to help in deciding which of the optional fields and rules should be adopted in any one particular system.

Is your system a multilingual one? If so, pay special attention to:

* Introduction, Section 6 — Language of analysis
* Annex 2 — Options provided for language of the name of the government
* Annex 3 — Section on multilingual thesaurus searching
* Annex 5 — Options provided for language of place names
Are you a member of an information network? If so, pay special attention to:

Introduction, Section 9 — Information networks
Annex 18 — Data exchange procedures in a formal information network
Field-by-field guide — fields 001 to 003

Are you interested in using computerized authority records? If so, pay special attention to:

Introduction, Section 8 — Computerized authority records
Annex 2 — Corporate Name Authority File rules
Annex 4 — Serial Authority File rules
Annex 6 — Guide to managing acquisitions fields

Are you interested in using the database for managing acquisitions? If so, study:

Annex 6 — Guide to managing acquisitions fields
Field-by-field guide — fields 500 to 517
INTRODUCTION

This manual has been prepared to provide a tool for libraries and documentation centres setting out, probably without the benefit of previous experience, to computerize their bibliographic information systems using a microcomputer.

The manual is based on experience gained in the course of projects to assist microcomputer-based information systems — specifically, the International Development Information Network (IDIN), supported by the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) Development Centre, and several projects supported by IDRC.

The manual includes:

• a database design, in the form of a list of fields for the description and management of the items in the database. The database design aims to be as complete as possible, presenting all of the data elements that any information system might need. Individual information systems might need all of the elements, or only some;
• a set of rules for the content of the fields;
• guidelines on how the database may be used for information management, retrieval, and dissemination; and
• guidelines on the operation of the system within the context of an information network.

1. INFLUENCES ON THE DATABASE DESIGN

The hub of a bibliographic information system is the bibliographic database. The database is made up of bibliographic records, each of which describes a bibliographic item (a book, a report, a periodical article, a thesis, etc.). The information in the database is used for information retrieval; for producing printed catalogues, indexes, bibliographies, and current awareness bulletins; for controlling such operations as acquisitions and budgeting; and for keeping statistics.

There are two main aspects of database design:

1) The structure of the bibliographic record, i.e., the manner in which the information in the record is divided into fields and subfields; and

2) The content of the bibliographic record, i.e., the form of data to be entered in each field.

The database design in the present manual represents a natural development of the design and philosophy put forward in Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems (MPRDIS). That manual presented a design based on minicomputer technology and was written specifically for documentation centres participating in information systems of the

---

3 The members of IDIN comprise the documentation centres of the five regional development associations that meet under the umbrella of the Inter-Regional Co-ordinating Committee of Development Associations (ICCDA). These are the Association of Development Research and Training Institutes of Asia and the Pacific (ADIPA), the Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social (AICARDES), the Consejo Latinoamericano de Ciencias Sociales (CLACSO), the Council for the Development of Economic and Social Research in Africa (CODESRIA), and the European Association of Development Research and Training Institutes (EADI).

DEVSIS-type (Development Sciences Information System). Since its publication, however, two developments have led to the need for a companion volume.

First, the capacity of microcomputers to handle bibliographic information systems has increased, thus giving more documentation centres than ever before the opportunity to computerize their operations.

Second, the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (Unesco) published the Common Communication Format (CCF), which proposes a common method for structuring bibliographic records so that they may be freely exchanged among different information systems.

Thus, the design presented in this manual differs from MPRDIS in the following ways:

1) The sample implementation is based on a microcomputer software package (MICRO-ISIS) instead of on a minicomputer software package (MINISIS).

2) Some minor changes to the database design have been introduced to facilitate the manipulation of data using currently available microcomputer software.

3) More practical guidance is given to assist users who may be managing a computerized system for the first time, including:
   - fields for the management of acquisitions,
   - an annex on subject indexing and retrieval in a computerized system,
   - guidelines for the use of computerized authority records,
   - in the Field-by-Field Guide, system-manager notes providing guidance on the manipulation and use of some of the fields,
   - sample printed outputs, and
   - a diskette containing a sample application.

4) A small number of changes have been introduced to make the bibliographic record structure more compatible with the CCF, within the limits of MICRO-ISIS.

5) Some minor changes to the cataloguing rules have been introduced to bring them closer to the Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules.

6) Although the present manual provides guidance on the operation of a bibliographic information system within a network, it is not aimed specifically at DEVSIS-type operations.

A detailed chart of the differences between MPRDIS and the present manual is given in Annex 13.

---


6 MICRO-ISIS is the term used throughout this manual for Unesco’s software CDS/ISIS Mini-Micro Version 3.07.

7 MINISIS, a generalized information management system developed, disseminated, and supported by IDRC. It operates on the Hewlett-Packard 3000 Series of minicomputers.

2. MICROCOMPUTER SOFTWARE

The manual is intended to be used with any microcomputer software designed for database management, and containing the features required to fulfill the needs of a bibliographic information system, including the ability to:

- handle relatively long, variable-length fields,
- handle relatively large databases,
- retrieve and sort records using any desired data element, and
- print records in any desired form.

Annex 20 shows how the system may be implemented using the software package INMAGIC-PLUS. However, the software package chosen to illustrate the implementation of the system is MICRO-ISIS (Version 3.07). This is a generalized information storage and retrieval system designed at Unesco and is most commonly used on an IBM or IBM-compatible microcomputer. It contains many of the features of the mainframe version of CDS/ISIS.

The minimum hardware requirements to run MICRO-ISIS are:

- 1 IBM PC/XT microcomputer or a compatible machine,
- 512k RAM memory (640k recommended for some applications),
- 1 hard disk,
- 1 floppy disk drive,
- 1 monitor, and
- 1 printer.

MICRO-ISIS allows you to:

- define a database,
- enter new records in the database,
- modify or delete existing records,
- build and maintain inverted files for information retrieval,
- retrieve information using Boolean logic,
- sort records into alphabetical order to create catalogues and indexes,
- print and display the records using your own specifications, and
- exchange data with other systems in ISO 2709 format.9

Features of MICRO-ISIS include:

- fields are variable length,
- data may be entered in both upper and lower case letters, and diacriticals (i.e., accents) may be entered,
- subfields are indicated through the use of embedded subfield delimiters,
- fields may be repeatable,

---

• filing order may be changed through the use of special characters. (This means, for instance, that an article at the beginning of a title can be ignored when the title field is being sorted to create a title index; and a title beginning with a digit may be filed as if the number were written as a word.),
• several indexing techniques are available for creating inverted files,
• data may be retrieved by using inverted files or by searching the whole database sequentially (also called “free-text searching”), and
• data may be extracted from an alternative record in the database for printing or displaying.

The address for inquiries concerning MICRO-ISIS is:

Mr Giampaolo Del Bigio,
Division of Software Development and Applications
Unesco
7 Place de Fontenoy
75700 Paris, France

MICRO-ISIS is distributed as a standard package providing all of its functions and features to the end-user. It also includes a feature that allows special applications to be written using an internal programming language. The design proposed in this manual is based on the standard version. However, on the accompanying diskette, some specially written programs have been provided to facilitate some of the options.

3. RELATION TO THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

The record structure proposed in this manual is compatible with that of the Common Communication Format (CCF), and all the mandatory fields for the CCF have been included. However, it is not an implementation of the CCF in its pure form. The CCF uses a sophisticated system of links and segments to handle the relationship between bibliographic levels. The current standard version of MICRO-ISIS cannot handle links and segments directly, and this manual retains the two-level record structure of MPRDIS.

The design in this manual also differs from the CCF in other ways:

• no attempt has been made to use the same field tags as in the CCF,
• some fields have been included that are not in the CCF, and some of the optional CCF fields have not been included,
• indicators have not been used, and
• for some fields, fewer subfields have been provided.

For users wishing to exchange data with other systems via the CCF, a correspondence table between this manual and the CCF is given in Annex 14.
4. **RULES FOR BIBLIOGRAPHIC DESCRIPTION**

The second edition of the *Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules* (AACR2), which incorporates the provisions of the ISBDs (International Standard Bibliographic Description), is used and respected in many countries. For this reason, the rules for bibliographic description in the manual adhere as closely as possible to AACR2.

Strict adherence to AACR2, however, may not necessarily be desirable in a computerized information system. For example, in a computerized system, the concept of main entry need no longer apply because the items can be retrieved, or appear in an index, under any element in the record.

The rules for bibliographic description in this manual differ from the AACR2 rules in the following ways:

1) No rules are supplied for the selection of main entry and added entry headings. However, if a main entry heading is desired, it can be generated by instructing the system, when sorting, to look first for the first personal author. If there is no personal author, choose the first conference name. If there is no conference, choose the first corporate author, and if there is no corporate author, choose the title.

2) The statement of responsibility is replaced by fields for personal author and corporate author, entered in heading form to serve as access points to the record.

3) The rules for corporate authors are slightly different from those in AACR2 (explained in Annex 2, Section II — Rules for Names of Corporate Bodies).

4) To take advantage of the increased retrieval possibilities that computerized information systems offer, some fields, such as Meeting(s) (114) and Thesis (141), are structured in such a way as to make them more accessible for retrieval purposes.

5. **BIBLIOGRAPHIC LEVEL**

The term bibliographic level is used to indicate where the item being catalogued stands in a set of hierarchical relationships. Four different types of bibliographic items have been identified. These are:

A **Analytic**. An item that is not issued separately but as part of a parent item, such as a chapter from a book, a paper from a set of conference papers bound together, or an article from a periodical.

M **Monograph**. An item issued as a single physical piece that is complete in its own right, such as a book, a report, a thesis, or a map. A monograph may either stand alone or be part of a collection or of a series.

C **Collection**. An item issued in two or more physical pieces, either at the same time or over a predetermined period, that is complete in its own right, such as a multivolume encyclopedia.
Serial. A publication issued in successive parts and intended to be continued indefinitely, such as a periodical, an annual, or a monographic series.

In this manual, provision is made for describing items at up to two levels. Field 007 is used for recording the bibliographic level of the item being catalogued, and field 008 is used, if applicable, for recording the bibliographic level of the parent item. The possible combinations of bibliographic level are:

**AM** — Part of a monograph

**Examples**

A conference paper published as part of the proceedings of a conference

A chapter of a book

**AS** — Part of a single issue of a serial

**Examples**

An article from a periodical

A contribution from a yearbook

**M** — A monograph

**Examples**

A book

A single-volume report

A single-volume thesis

A map

A tape/slide show

A film

**C** — A collection

**Examples**

A multivolume encyclopedia

A two-volume report

**MC** — A monograph that is part of a collection

**Example**

Volume 1 of a two-volume report

**Note** A separate record is created for each volume in a collection only if the individual volumes have different titles, or are by different authors or cover different subject matter.
AC — A chapter from a collection

Example
A chapter from a two-volume report, the separate volumes of which have not been given individual treatment.

MS — A monograph that is part of a serial

Example
A monograph that belongs to a monographic series

CS — A collection that is part of a serial

Example
A collection that belongs to a monographic series

Because this manual does not include guidelines for establishing a database for managing a serials collection, the serial level (S) is never used on its own.

6. LANGUAGE OF ANALYSIS

The term “language of analysis” has been used throughout the manual to mean the language of the system chosen for recording information such as the notes, the descriptors, and the abstract.

In a unilingual system, the language of analysis is the language of the system, i.e., the language of the users of the system.

In a multilingual system, a choice will have to be made as to the language of analysis for each item. The choice will usually depend on the language of the item being described.

As a general rule, in a multilingual system, if the language, or one of the languages, of the item being catalogued is one of the languages of the system, then that language will be the language of analysis.

Examples

1. If the languages of the system are English and French, and the item being catalogued is in French, then the language of analysis will be French.

2. If the languages of the system are English and French and the item being catalogued is a bilingual text in Indonesian and English, then the language of analysis will be English.

If the item being catalogued is not written in one of the languages of the system, then the language of analysis may be any one of the languages of the system. Individual documentation centres may decide to establish their own guidelines for choosing the language of analysis in such cases.
7. **INDEXING VOCABULARY**

To illustrate the use of a thesaurus for subject indexing and retrieval in a computerized system, the *Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development*\(^{10}\) has been used. The *Macrothesaurus* is trilingual with separate English, French,\(^{11}\) and Spanish\(^{12}\) versions. The first two editions were published in 1972 and 1978 by the OECD. The third edition was published in 1985 in New York by the United Nations. The current edition, the fourth, was again published by the OECD in 1991.

8. **COMPUTERIZED AUTHORITY RECORDS**

The manual recommends the use of authority files for certain data elements, especially for names of corporate bodies. For these fields, and in the relevant annexes, the option has been provided to use either manual authority files (in the form of a card file), or computerized authority records.

The use of computerized authority records allows a short code to be entered into the appropriate field of the bibliographic record instead of the full information required in that field. Whenever the bibliographic record is displayed, sorted, or printed, the full information, stored in the authority record, appears in the record instead of the code (that is, the appropriate field from the authority record appears instead of the field in the bibliographic record).

In MICRO-ISIS, the authority records must be in the same database as the bibliographic records. The authority code entered in the relevant field of the bibliographic record may be simply the Master File Number (MFN) of the authority record, or a short alphabetic code. If the authority code is the MFN of the authority record, the link is made directly using the REF function of the CDS/ISIS formatting language. If the authority code is a string of alphabetic characters, the link to the authority record is made through the inverted file, using the L and REF functions of the CDS/ISIS formatting language.

The advantage of using authority files in this way is that the name only needs to be entered into the system once, thus saving time, reducing the possibility of error, and ensuring consistency. If the name needs to be changed, only one record needs to be changed — the authority file record. The uses and advantages of computerized authority files are discussed fully in *Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems*.\(^{13}\)

The option of using computerized authority records has been provided for:

---


1) All of the fields containing corporate bodies, that is,
   - 111 Corporate author(s),
   - 112 Affiliation,
   - 113 Other associated institution(s), and
   - 211 Corporate author(s) — parent.

2) Fields containing a serial title, that is:
   - 140 Monographic series, and
   - 200/201 Title of serial and ISSN.

3) The supplier field (515) used for acquisitions.

In these fields, an optional subfield z has been provided for the entry of the authority code.

In systems that have computerized authority records linked to these fields, only the appropriate authority code will be entered in the field.

In systems that are not using computerized authority records linked to the fields (i.e., systems using manual authority files), the complete information will be entered in the field.

Using the same technique, computerized authority records for personal author names, project titles, and meetings could also be created.

Whether individual centres decide to use authority records, and for which data elements, will depend on their own needs and on the amount of computer storage capacity available to them.

9. INFORMATION NETWORKS

As in MPRDIS, this manual provides for the needs of documentation centres participating in information networks, by including fields and rules intended to facilitate exchange of data.

Three kinds of situations are envisaged:

1) The stand-alone information system that does not participate in a network.

2) The informal network in which there is no centralized database, but in which the participants agree to use certain common tools to facilitate the informal exchange of data. The participants will use a common indexing vocabulary and probably a common database design and cataloguing rules. If it is a multilingual network, the participants will either have available in their subject a suitable multilingual thesaurus or will agree to use a common language for indexing. An example of this kind of network is IDIN (International Development Information Network).

3) The formal information network, or cooperative information system, in which participants send their data on a diskette to a coordinating centre, which merges the data into a common...
database and disseminates the information in the form of abstracting and indexing publications, specialized bibliographies, on-line search services, and other products. Such a network will require its participants to adhere closely to a common database design and a common set of rules for bibliographic description. If it is a multilingual network, participants will need to use not only a common indexing vocabulary, but also special rules for the language of place names and names of governments used in corporate bodies.

Throughout the manual, options are provided to accommodate all three situations.

For example, three fields are provided to facilitate the management of data within a network: 001 — Participating centre acronym, 002 — Participating centre record number, and 003 — Record status. Participants in a formal network need all three of these fields. Members of an informal network require fields 001 and 002, but not 003. A stand-alone system does not require any of these fields.

Annex 18 provides guidelines for the practical management of data exchange in a formal network.
**LIST OF FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Subfields</th>
<th>Repeatable</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Inversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001</td>
<td>Participating centre acronym</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002</td>
<td>Participating centre record number</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>003</td>
<td>Record status</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006</td>
<td>Date record changed</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>Bibliographic level</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008</td>
<td>Bibliographic level — parent</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Country of origin</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record number of parent</td>
<td></td>
<td>6</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Record number(s) of part(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Record number(s) of other language version(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Language of analysis</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>Language(s) of text</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Language(s) of summaries</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14 Use:
- E = Essential (must be present in all records);
- M = Mandatory (must be entered if it applies to the item in hand);
- O = Optional (but may be E or M for individual systems).

15 Indexing techniques for inversion:
- 0 = whole field or subfield;
- 2 = descriptors between triangular brackets;
- 4 = words.

Fields selected for inversion are suggestions only. Individual systems may select fields for inversion according to their requirements.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Subfields</th>
<th>Repeatable</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Inversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Translated title — English</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>Translated title — French</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104</td>
<td>Translated title — Spanish</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105</td>
<td>Translated title — other language</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td>a Personal author</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^a 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Role</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td>a Main body</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Sub-body</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^b 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Place</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^c 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^d 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>z Authority code</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^z 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td>a Main body</td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Sub-body</td>
<td></td>
<td>^b 4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Place</td>
<td></td>
<td>^c 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td>^d 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>z Authority code</td>
<td></td>
<td>^z 0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other associated institution(s)</td>
<td>a Main body</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Sub-body</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^b 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Place</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^c 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^d 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>e Role</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>z Authority code</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^z 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
<td>a Meeting name and number</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Place</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^b 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^c 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d Dates</td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>e Date — ISO form</td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^e 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>25</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>a Publication place</td>
<td></td>
<td>250</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Publisher</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date of publication /issue — free form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>30</td>
<td>E</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date of publication /issue — ISO form</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td>a Number of pages/pieces</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Description</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Dimensions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tag</td>
<td>Field name</td>
<td>Subfields</td>
<td>Repeatable</td>
<td>Length</td>
<td>Use</td>
<td>Inversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>--------</td>
<td>-----</td>
<td>-----------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part statement</td>
<td>a Volume/issue no.</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Pagination of part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Monographic series</td>
<td>a Series title</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Series part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>z Authority code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^z 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td>a Thesis designation</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Degree</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Course</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d Number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
<td>a Project name</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Project number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^b 0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>700</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>ISBN(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>13</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Document number(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td>R</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>Availability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>100</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Subfields</th>
<th>Repeatable</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Inversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>400</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>O</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>z Authority code&lt;sup&gt;16&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>500</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
<td>a Personal author</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Role</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
<td>a Main body</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>b Sub-body</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>c Place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>d Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>z Authority code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Inversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>2&lt;sup&gt;17&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>M</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>1000</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject heading</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<sup>16</sup> Subfielded only if option to use computerized authority records for serial titles is adopted. Otherwise, not subfielded.

<sup>17</sup> See Field-by-Field Guide, field 300, System manager note 2.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Subfields</th>
<th>Repeatable</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Use</th>
<th>Inversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>E</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call number</td>
<td></td>
<td>40</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>Number of copies</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession number(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>M</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><strong>ACQUISITIONS FIELDS</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>500</td>
<td>Acquisition type</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>510</td>
<td>Date ordered</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>511</td>
<td>Date claimed</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>512</td>
<td>Date received</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>513</td>
<td>Number of copies ordered</td>
<td></td>
<td>2</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>514</td>
<td>Requester(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>25</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515</td>
<td>Supplier</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>O</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a Supplier name</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b Address — line 1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>c Address — line 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>d Address — line 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>e Country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>z Supplier code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^z 0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>516</td>
<td>Price</td>
<td></td>
<td>20</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a Price</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>b Currency</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>517</td>
<td>Acquisition notes</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td>O</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>999</td>
<td>Record type</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>O(^{18})</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{18}\) Essential if computerized authority records are included in the database.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bib level:</td>
<td>007 008</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Country of origin</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record nos. of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Language(s) of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>Analysis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Text</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Summaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Translated title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103</td>
<td>E/F/S/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date — free form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date — ISO form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Mono series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### INPUT SHEET

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>ISBN(s)</td>
<td>161</td>
<td>Doc no(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>Availability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The field-by-field guide is the main section of the manual. It describes each of the fields in the database, and is arranged in field tag order.

THE INPUT SHEET

On pages 17-18, the input sheet is reproduced. It provides a visual presentation of the fields. The input sheet should be filled out completely by documentalists who are learning to use the system. Those who are experienced enough to enter data directly on-line should use the input sheet for recording information gathered before they begin a data input session — for example, the correct form of corporate author or personal author name, the call number, and subject descriptors. The Master File Number (MFN) should be written in the space provided on top of the input sheet, and the input sheets should be kept for a defined period as a backup to the system.

FIELD DESCRIPTIONS

Each field is described under four headings — Characteristics, Purpose, Selection, and Data entry.

When applicable, there are also Definitions, as well as System manager notes, which give guidance on the manipulation of the field using MICRO-ISIS.

For some fields, Options have been provided to allow for the needs of different kinds of information systems. Most of the options are related to the use of computerized authority records, and to the special needs of multilingual information systems.

Characteristics

- Essential, mandatory, or optional:

  Essential means that the field must be entered in every record.

  Mandatory means that the field must be entered if it is applicable to the item being catalogued. For example, if the item is an article from a periodical, the serial title must be entered.

  Optional means that the documentation centre may decide whether this field is applicable to its own situation or not. For example, if the documentation centre has decided not to computerize the processing of acquisitions, it does not need to enter the fields provided for this purpose.

- Repeatable or Not repeatable:

  Repeatable means that the field may have more than one occurrence. For example, the personal author field may contain more than one personal author. In repeatable fields, the occurrences are separated by a percentage sign.

  Not repeatable means that the field may contain only one occurrence, for example, collation, date of publication/issue.
• Subfielded or Not subfielded:

**Subfielded** means that the information entered in the field is divided into separate elements. This allows the elements to be treated differently when the field is being sorted or printed. For example, the conference field may be sorted by the country or by the city in which the conference was held because these elements are in separate subfields.

Each element to be considered as a subfield is preceded by a subfield delimiter in the form of a circumflex accent and a letter of the alphabet, for example, `^a`.

**Not subfielded** means the field is not divided into separate elements, for example, the title field.

• Maximum length:

**Maximum length** of the field is the maximum number of characters allowed for each occurrence of the field, including subfields, subfield delimiters, punctuation, and spaces, but excluding the percentage sign used to separate the occurrences.

**Purpose**

This section describes the intended use of the field.

**Selection**

This section gives guidance in choosing the information that is to be entered in the field.

**Data entry**

This section shows how the information is to be entered in the field, including rules for capitalization and punctuation.

**GENERAL GUIDE TO DATA ENTRY**

In MICRO-ISIS:

1) Data can only be entered and modified using the screen worksheet (one or more of these will have been created at the time the database was defined).

2) You should not press the [Enter] (or [Carriage return]) key until you have finished typing the field. Once you have pressed [Enter], the cursor will automatically move to the beginning of the next field.

3) The occurrences of a repeatable field are separated by a percentage sign. No spaces are entered before or after the percentage sign.

Example

```
En%Es%Fr
```

4) The subfields in a subfielded field are preceded by subfield delimiters consisting of a circumflex accent and either a letter of the alphabet or a numeral. The letters may be in either
upper case or lower case. In this manual, letters of the alphabet are used, and they are always shown in lower case.

Example

^a

No space is entered before or after the subfield delimiter.

Example

^aBrowning, Robert^bbed.

The subfield delimiters do not appear in the record when it is printed or displayed for the user.

5) A repeatable subfielded field is entered using both the percentage sign and subfield delimiters.

Example

^aEliot, Thomas^bcomp%^aDevereux, James^bbed.
In MICRO-ISIS, the Master File Number (MFN) is the record number, i.e., a number assigned to each record in the database. It provides a unique identification for each record.

The MFN is assigned automatically by the system when the record is entered into the database.

Write the MFN in the space provided at the top of the input sheet.
PARTICIPATING CENTRE ACRONYM

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional  (Essential for participants in a network)
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

In a cooperative information system in which participating centres either exchange machine-readable records or contribute them to a centralized database, **field 001** is used to identify the centre that created the record. Normally, the centre is identified by its acronym.

Example

CODESRIA

Using MICRO-ISIS, this field is created automatically when the record is copied to be sent to another system. Therefore, this field is left empty at the time of data entry.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. This field should not appear on the MICRO-ISIS data entry worksheet.

2. This field should be created in the reformatting FST when exporting data using the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential for participants in a network)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

In a cooperative information system in which participating centres either exchange machine-readable records or contribute them to a centralized database, field 002 is used to hold the record number of the item in the originating centre’s database.

This is necessary because new record numbers will be assigned to the records once they are imported into another system.

DATA ENTRY

The field contains the Master File Number (MFN) of the record in the originating centre’s database.

Example

512

Using MICRO-ISIS, this field is created automatically when the record is copied to be sent to another system. Therefore, this field is left empty at the time of data entry.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. This field should not appear on the MICRO-ISIS data entry worksheet.

2. This field should be created in the reformatting FST when exporting data using the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Essential in a network with a centralized database)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

In a cooperative information system in which participating centres contribute records to a centralized database, field 003 is used by the participating centre to enter a code showing whether the record is a new record or a record that has already been submitted.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. If the record is new, and is to be submitted to the coordinating centre, enter the code N.

2. Once the record has been submitted to the coordinating centre, change the code to S.

For further information on the data exchange procedures in a network with a centralized database, see Annex 18.
005 DATE RECORD ENTERED

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 005 is used to record the date on which the item was first entered into the database.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the current date in the form YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY stands for the year, MM for the month, and DD for the day.

Example

For 24th June, 1988
Enter: 1988-06-24
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 006 is used to enter the date on which the record was last changed.

DATA ENTRY

If the record is being changed, enter the current date in the form YYYY-MM-DD, where YYYY stands for the year, MM for the month, and DD for the day.

Example

For 11th July, 1988
Enter: 1988-07-11
007  BIBLIOGRAPHIC LEVEL

CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

Field 007 is used to enter a code indicating the bibliographic level of the item being catalogued. This information is necessary when records are being exported to a system with a different record format. The information can also be used in on-line retrieval to limit the search to a particular kind of document.

At the same time, the level of the parent item, if applicable, is entered in field 008 — Bibliographic level — parent.

DEFINITION

The term bibliographic level refers to the position of the item being catalogued in a set of hierarchical relationships.

The following are the possible bibliographic levels:

A  Analytic — Refers to an item that is not issued alone but as part of a larger work, such as an article from a periodical, a chapter from a book, or a paper from a set of conference papers issued as a single entity.

M  Monographic — Refers to an item issued as a single physical piece that is complete in its own right, such as a book, a report, a thesis, or a map. It may also be one volume of a multivolume work.

C  Collective — Refers to a multivolume work, composed of a finite number of volumes, issued either at the same time or over a period, such as a two-volume report or a multivolume encyclopedia.

S  Serial — Refers to an item that is issued in successive parts, at intervals, bearing a chronological and/or numerical designation, and intended to be continued indefinitely, such as a periodical, a yearbook, or a monographic series.

Note  As this manual does not include guidelines for establishing a database for managing a serials collection, the serial level (S) is never entered in field 007.
**SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY**

The following are the possible entries in fields **007** and **008**:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Level</th>
<th>Examples</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>007: A</td>
<td>a chapter from a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: M</td>
<td>a paper in a volume of conference proceedings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a map from a report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: A</td>
<td>a chapter from a collection (when the separate volumes of the</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: C</td>
<td>collection have not been given individual treatment)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: A</td>
<td>an article from a periodical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: M</td>
<td>a book</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: (empty)</td>
<td>a single-volume report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a single-volume thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a film</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a single-volume manual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>a cassette</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: M</td>
<td>a volume of a multivolume encyclopedia</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: C</td>
<td>a volume of a two-volume report</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: M</td>
<td>a monograph that is part of a monographic series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: C</td>
<td>a multivolume work catalogued as a single item</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: (empty)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007: C</td>
<td>a multivolume work that is part of a monographic series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008: S</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
008  BIBLIOGRAPHIC LEVEL — PARENT

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is part of a larger work, field 008 is used to enter the bibliographic level of the parent item.

This field is only used in conjunction with field 007.

DEFINITION, SELECTION, AND DATA ENTRY

See field 007.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 009 is used to indicate the country from which the item originated. It is used to retrieve information on the countries of origin of items in the database.

SELECTION

1. When the item is published, select the country of publication, as entered in field 121, subfield c — Publisher country code.

2. When the item is an article from a periodical, enter the country in which the periodical is published.

3. When the item is unpublished, enter the country in which it was produced.

Examples

The item is a monograph published simultaneously in Canada and the United Kingdom. Canada has been selected for entry in field 121. Select Canada as the country of origin of the item.

The item is an article from the periodical Economic and political weekly, which is published in India. Select India as the country of origin of the item.

The item is an unpublished report produced in Senegal as part of a project sponsored by the United Nations Development Programme in New York. Select Senegal as the country of origin of the item.

The item is an unpublished conference paper prepared in the Netherlands for a conference held in Bogotá, Colombia. Select the Netherlands as the country of origin of the item.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the ISO two-letter country code (Annex 10) corresponding to the country of origin of the item.

Example

CA
010  RECORD NUMBER OF PARENT

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is part of a monograph or part of a collection (with bibliographic level AM, AC, or MC), field 010 is used to enter the Master File Number (MFN) of the parent item. This information facilitates the tracing of related records, if the records need to be updated or deleted.

In the record for the parent, the MFN for the part will be entered in field 011.

Note Because this manual does not include provision for the creation of records for serials management, this field is not entered when the parent is a serial (bibliographic levels MS, CS, or AS).

DATA ENTRY

Enter the MFN of the parent.

Example

The item is a chapter from a book. The MFN of the record for the book is 1298.

Enter: 1298
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 6

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a monograph or a collection from which a part has been selected for treatment as an analytic, or a collection from which a single volume has been selected for treatment as a monograph, **field 011** is used to enter the MFN(s) of the part(s). This information facilitates the tracing of related records, if the records need to be updated or deleted.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the MFN of each part, separated by a percentage sign.

Example

The item is a book from which each of the nine chapters has been selected for separate treatment as an analytic. The records for the analytics have MFNs 1299 to 1307 inclusive.

Enter: 1299%1300%1301%1302%1303%1304%1305%1306%1307
**Record Number(s) of Other Language Version(s)**

**Characteristics**

- Optional
- Repeatable
- Not subfielded
- Maximum length 6

**Purpose**

When more than one language version of a work is being catalogued, field 012 is used to enter the MFN(s) of the records for the other language version(s). This information facilitates the retrieval of other language versions of the item.

**Data Entry**

Enter the MFN of the other language version. If there is more than one MFN to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

**Example**

The system has obtained a report in three languages — English, French, and Spanish. A separate record has been created for each language version with MFNs 3101 (for the English version), 3102 (for the French version), and 3103 (for the Spanish version).

For the English version, enter: 3102%3103
For the French version, enter: 3101%3103
For the Spanish version, enter: 3101%3102
**CHARACTERISTICS**

Optional (Essential in a multilingual system)
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 2

**PURPOSE**

Field 020 is used to record the language of analysis, that is, the language of the system chosen to enter such elements as the notes, the abstract, and the descriptors.

**SELECTION**

Option 1: unilingual system

In a unilingual system, the language of analysis is the language of the system, i.e., the language of the users of the system.

Example

The text of the item is in English. The language of the system is Spanish. The language of analysis is therefore Spanish.

Option 2: multilingual system

1. If the language, or one of the languages, of the item is one of the languages of the system, select that language as the language of analysis.

   Example

   The languages of the system are French and English. The item is in French, therefore the language of analysis is French.

2. If the item is not written in one of the languages of the system, individual documentation centres may establish their own rules for choosing which of the languages of the system should be the language of analysis.

**DATA ENTRY**

Option 1: unilingual system

Using MICRO-ISIS, this field is created automatically at the time the record is copied to be sent to another system. (See System manager note below.)

Therefore, this field is left empty at the time of data entry.
Option 2: multilingual system

Enter the appropriate two-letter language code (selected from the list in Annex 8).

Example

Fr

System manager note

1. For a unilingual system, this field should not appear on the data entry worksheet.

2. Whenever records from a unilingual system are being exported to a multilingual system, create this field, containing the language code corresponding to the language of the system, in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility.
CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 021 is used to enter the language or languages in which the item is written. It is used when a user wishes to retrieve only items in particular languages.

SELECTION

Do not enter languages in which only a summary or abstract of the text appears. Enter these languages in field 022 — Language(s) of summaries.

Example

The item is written in Dutch with summaries in English and French. Enter the language code for Dutch in field 021.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the appropriate language code from Annex 8. When there is more than one language, separate the codes with a percentage sign.

Example

En%Fr%Es
022 LANGUAGE(S) OF SUMMARIES

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

When the item contains summaries or abstracts of its contents in languages other than the language of the main text, field 022 is used to enter the language(s) of the summaries.

SELECTION

Do not enter the language of the summary if it is the same as the language of the text.

Example

The item is written in Spanish with summaries in Spanish and English. Enter only the English language code in field 022.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the appropriate language code from Annex 8. If there is more than one language, separate the codes with a percentage sign.

Example

En%Fr
CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 100 is used to enter the title and subtitle of the item in hand, whether it be a monograph, a collection, or an analytic.

SELECTION

1. Enter the title that is found on the title page of the item.

2. If there is no title page, select the title from the cover, half title page, spine, or other part of the item. If the title is cited in different ways on these parts of the item, choose the title by which it is most likely to be known.

3. If there are several language versions of the title, choose one language version for field 100 and enter the other language versions in field 101 — Parallel title(s). Choose, in order of preference:
   - the language of analysis,
   - the language best understood by the users, or
   - the title cited first on the title page, or title page substitute.

Examples

The item is written in Spanish and has titles in Spanish, English, and French. The language of analysis is English. Choose the English title.

The item is written in Chinese and has titles in Chinese and English. The language of analysis is French. Choose the English title.

The item has text and titles in German, Dutch, and Italian. The language of analysis is English. The German title appears first on the title page. Choose the German title.

4. If the item has no title, supply one in the language of analysis. The fact that the title is supplied is indicated by the fact that it is enclosed in square brackets (see paragraph 10 under Data entry).

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the selected title as it appears on the item.

2. Correct obvious typographical errors.
3. Capitalize the first letter of the title and of other words in the title that would normally be capitalized in the language involved (proper nouns in English, all nouns in German, etc.). Also capitalize the first letter of all significant words in the names of meetings, projects, and corporate bodies in the title.

4. Separate the title from the subtitle with a space colon space ( : ). Precede a supplement or a section with a period and a space.

5. Do not enter a period at the end of the title unless the last word is an abbreviation. However, enter other punctuation that may appear at the end of the title, such as a question mark or an exclamation mark.

6. Do not enter periods or spaces within an acronym.

7. Do not enter the hyphen in hyphenated words unless the two parts of the word can stand alone as separate words. (This is necessary because, when inverting words, MICRO-ISIS treats a hyphen as a word boundary.)

Examples

Enter: co-ordination as coordination
       inter-regional as interregional

But retain the hyphen in:
       North-South
       round-table.

8. If the title begins with an article ("a", "an", "the", and their equivalents in other languages), enclose the article in triangular brackets < >. This device is used in MICRO-ISIS to allow the article to be ignored in an alphabetical title list. The triangular brackets do not appear in printed output.

9. If the only title on the item is in a non-Roman script, transliterate it according to the appropriate ISO standard for transliteration.¹⁹

10. If the title has been supplied by the documentalist because the item itself was lacking a title, enclose the supplied title in square brackets. Enclose each square bracket in triangular brackets: < [ > ] >. This device ensures that the square brackets will be ignored when the title is included in an alphabetical title list. The triangular brackets will not appear in printed output. (See last example below.)

11. If the title is unusually long, it may be abridged. Do not, however, omit words at the beginning of the title. Indicate omissions by inserting three dots.

12. If the title requires additional words to make it more meaningful, enclose the additions in square brackets. In this case, it is not necessary to enclose the square brackets in triangular brackets. (Do not add words at the beginning of the title.)

¹⁹ Standards for the transliteration of Arabic, Chinese, Cyrillic, Greek, Hebrew, and Japanese are listed in the bibliography under the International Organization for Standardization.
Examples

Canada and the Third World: what are the choices?
Is it tomorrow yet?: handbook for the educators of the very young
<El> petróleo y el desarrollo en Bolivia
International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs
Sociétés japonaises de commerce général: leur rôle dans le développement économique
Population projections of Bangladesh 1975-2025: under assumptions of decreasing fertility and decreasing mortality (df-dm) and constant fertility and decreasing mortality (cf-dm)
International Symposium on Pastures in the Tropics and Subtropics: proceedings of a symposium on tropical agriculture research
Crise alimentaire en Afrique tropicale: le défi de l'IITA
Activities of the Advisory Committee on Science and Technology for Development
Pricing, subsidies, and related policies in food and agriculture
Consideration of the reports of the 1983 panels of the Advisory Committee: reinforcement of linkages between research and development activities and the production system: report of the Ad Hoc Panel of Specialists...
Consultant's report [on management control systems]
<[]>Thatch: a bibliography<[]>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the FST for the inverted file, fields 100 and 101 have both been assigned the field identifier 100. To retrieve a title regardless of which of these two fields it is in, use field identifier 100.

Example

To retrieve the title Tesauro OIT, use the search expression:

TESAUR0 (F) OIT/(100)
101 PARALLEL TITLE(S)

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the same title appears on the item in more than one language, field 101 is used to enter the language versions not selected for entry in field 100 — Title.

SELECTION

Select each of the language versions of the title not entered in field 100.

Option
Ignore titles in non-Roman scripts.

DATA ENTRY

1. Follow the rules for data entry under field 100.

2. If there is more than one title to be entered in the field, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Example

Field 100: ILO thesaurus : labour, employment and training terminology

Field 101: Thésaurus BIT : terminologie du travail, de l’emploi et de la formation%Tesauro OIT : terminología de trabajo, empleo y formación

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In the display format, field 101 is printed directly after field 100, and a space equals sign space ( = ) is supplied in front of each occurrence of field 101 (ISBD and AACR2 punctuation).

Example

ILO thesaurus : labour, employment and training terminology = Thésaurus BIT : terminologie du travail, de l’emploi et de la formation = Tesauro OIT : terminología de trabajo, empleo y formación
2. In the FST for the inverted file, fields 100 and 101 have both been assigned the field identifier 100. To retrieve a title regardless of which of these two fields it is in, use field identifier 100.

Example

To retrieve the title Tesauro OIT, use the search expression:

TESAURO (F) OIT/(100)
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory in systems that require a title in English)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, field 102 is used when the language of analysis is English and the title entered in field 100 — Title is in a language other than English.

SELECTION

1. If an English translation of the title appears on the title page or title page substitute of the item, it will be selected for entry in field 100 (see paragraph 3 of the selection guidelines under field 100), and field 102 will be left empty.

2. If an English translation of the title is found in the introduction, or in material accompanying the item, use that title for entry in field 102.

3. If no translation of the title can be found, the documentalist must supply one.

Example 1

The item is written in Arabic and has titles in Arabic and English. The language of analysis is English, and the English title has been selected for entry in field 100.

Do not enter anything in field 102.

Example 2

The item is written in Dutch. In a subsequent volume issued by the same organization, a preface in English has been supplied that cites the title of its predecessor in English. The language of analysis is English.

Enter the Dutch title in field 100 and the English translation in field 102:

Field 100: Ontwikkelingsgericht onderzoek : een inventarisatie van Nederlands maatschappijwetenschappelijk onderzoek met betrekking tot ontwikkelingslanden en de ontwikkelingsproblematiek

Field 102: Development-related research : an inventory of Dutch social science research on developing countries and their development problems
Example 3

The item is written in French. The language of analysis is English.

Enter the French title in field 100 and translate the title into English and enter the translation in field 102:

Field 100: Production agricole des femmes et les conditions de leur intégration dans les coopératives du Niger

Field 102: Agricultural production by women and the conditions of their integration into the cooperatives of Niger

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under field 100.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional  (Mandatory in systems that require a title in French)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, field 103 is used when the language of analysis is French and the title entered in field 100 — Title is in a language other than French.

SELECTION

1. If a French translation of the title appears on the title page or title page substitute of the item, it will be selected for entry in field 100 (see paragraph 3 of the selection guidelines under field 100), and field 103 will be left empty.

2. If a French translation of the title is found in the introduction, or in material accompanying the item, use that title for entry in field 103.

3. If no translation of the title can be found, the documentalist must supply one.

Examples

The item is written in Arabic and has titles in Arabic and French. The language of analysis is French, and the French title has been selected for entry in field 100.

Do not enter anything in field 103.

The item is written in Portuguese. A letter accompanying the item gives its title in French. Enter this title in field 103.

Field 100: Cabo Verde : classes sociais, estrutura familiar
Field 103: Cap Vert : classes sociales, structure familiale

The item is written in English. The language of analysis is French.

Enter the English title in field 100, translate the title into French, and enter the translation in field 103.

Field 100: Rural China today
Field 103: <La> Chine rurale aujourdhui

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under field 100.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory in systems that require a title in Spanish)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, field 104 is used when the language of analysis is Spanish and the title entered in field 100 — Title is in a language other than Spanish.

SELECTION

1. If a Spanish translation of the title appears on the title page or title page substitute of the item, it will be selected for entry in field 100 (see paragraph 3 of the selection guidelines under field 100), and field 104 will be left empty.

2. If a Spanish translation of the title is found in the introduction, or in material accompanying the item, use that title for entry in field 104.

3. If no translation of the title can be found, the documentalist must supply one.

Examples

The item is written in English and has titles in English and Spanish. The language of analysis is Spanish, and the Spanish title has been selected for entry in field 100.

Do not enter anything in field 104.

The item is written in Portuguese. The language of analysis is Spanish. Enter the Portuguese title in field 100, translate the title into Spanish, and enter the translation in field 104.

Field 100: Cabo Verde : classes sociais, estrutura familiar, migrações

Field 104: Cabo Verde : classes sociales, estructura familiar, migraciones

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under field 100.
**CHARACTERISTICS**

Optional  (Mandatory in systems that require a title in the language of the system, when this is not English, French, or Spanish)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

**PURPOSE**

In information systems where the title of the document must appear in one of the languages of the system, **field 105** is used when the title entered in **field 100** — Title is in a language other than the language of analysis, and when the language of analysis is neither English, French, nor Spanish.

**SELECTION**

Follow the guidelines for selection under **fields 102 to 104**.

**DATA ENTRY**

Follow the rules for data entry under **field 100**.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Repeatable
Subfielded

^^a Personal author
^^b Role

Maximum length 80

PURPOSE

Field 110 is used to enter the name of the person or persons responsible for the intellectual content of the work, and, when the person is the editor or the compiler, the relationship of the person to the work.

SELECTION

1. Enter the name of each author, editor, or compiler.
2. Do not select the names of translators or illustrators, unless the item is likely to be looked for under these names.
3. Do not select the names of persons responsible only for the foreword or the preface.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the names in the order in which they appear on the item.
2. Enter the subfields in the form:
   ^^a Personal author ^^b Role
3. When there is more than one author, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Example

^^a Blake, William^^b ed.%^^a Arnold, Matthew^^b ed.

Subfield a: personal author

1. If you are using a personal name authority file, enter the name as it is found in the authority file.
2. If the name is not in the authority file, or if you are not using an authority file, follow the rules in Annex 1: Guidelines for personal author names.
3. Precede each personal author name with the subfield delimiter ^a.

**Examples**

^aMcKenzie, Robert J.
^aWoh, Ho Suh
^aAl-Tayyeb, M.A.
^aPalmer, Ingrid
^aSaint-Gérard, Yolande

**Subfield b: role**

1. Enter the role only if the person is an editor or a compiler.

2. Enter the abbreviations ed. or comp.

3. Precede the role with the subfield delimiter ^b.

**Examples**

^aMorales-Gomez, Maria^bed.
^aFortunato, Francesca^bcomp.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded Either ^a Main body or ^z Authority code
^b Sub-body
^c Place
^d Country code

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 111 is used to enter the name of each corporate body that has intellectual responsibility for the item.

Note 1 Corporate bodies that only sponsored or funded the work are not entered here, but in field 113 — Other associated institution(s).

Note 2 Names of meetings, conferences, workshops, etc. are not entered here, but in field 114 — Meeting(s).

Note 3 Names of projects are not entered here, but in field 142 — Project(s).

Note 4 For guidance on retrieval on fields 111 to 113, see System manager note below.

SELECTION

1. Enter each body that is cited on the item as having intellectual responsibility for the work.

2. Do not enter the names of bodies that only published, sponsored, or funded the work.

3. If there is a doubt as to role of the body cited on the work, enter it in field 111 rather than in field 113 — Other associated institution(s).

4. If the name of the body is cited on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
   • the language of analysis, then
   • the language of the item.

5. If the name of the body has changed, select the name used by the body at the time the item was published or issued.
Example 1

The item is a study by the United Nations Population Division. The preface states that the work was funded by the United Nations Fund for Population Activities (UNFPA).

Field 111: UN. Population Division
Field 113: UNFPA

Example 2

At the top of the title page of the item are printed the names of two government ministries. Their relationship to the work is not stated. Enter both bodies in field 111.

Example 3

The item is a directory written by the OECD Development Centre. The text is in both English and French, and the organization’s name appears on the item in its official languages — English and French. The language of analysis is French.

Field 111: OCDE. Centre de Développement

DATA ENTRY

Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File

1. If you are using a manual Corporate Name Authority File (e.g., in the form of a card index), enter the corporate body as it is found in your authority file. If there is no entry for the body in the authority file, establish an entry according to the rules in Annex 2.

2. Enter the corporate body in the form:
   ^aMain body^bSub-body^cPlace^dCountry code

3. If there is no sub-body, do not enter subfield b. (See example 3 below.)

4. If there are more than two levels in the hierarchy, enter the second and subsequent levels in subfield b. Separate the sub-bodies in subfield b with a period and a space. (See example 4 below.)

Note The name of a government is not considered to constitute a hierarchical level on its own. (See example 2 below.)

5. Enter the place where the body is located in subfield c. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in Annex 5.

Exception Do not enter the place when the body is entered as a subheading under the name of a government. (See example 2 below.)

6. Enter in subfield d the ISO two-letter country code (Annex 10), corresponding to the country where the body is located.
7. If more than one body is to be entered in the field, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign. (See example 5 below.)

Example 1
^aUniversity of Dar-es-Salaam^bTraditional Medicine Research Unit^cDar-es-Salaam^dTZ

Example 2
^aGambia. Ministry of Agriculture and Natural Resources^bDepartment of Animal Husbandry^dGM

Example 3
^aUniversité d’Abidjan^cAbidjan^dCI

Example 4
^aOECD^bDevelopment Centre. External Cooperation Sector^cParis^dFR

Example 5
^aInternational Institute of Tropical Agriculture^cIbadan^dNG%^aUniversity of Ife^bInstitute of Agricultural Research and Training^cIbadan^dNG

Option 2: computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

1. If you have computerized Corporate Name Authority Records linked to the bibliographic records, as described in Section 8 of the Introduction and in Annex 2, enter the appropriate authority code for the body (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in subfield z. This can be found either by retrieving the authority record on-line, or by consulting a printout of the authority records. If there is no authority record for the body, create one following the rules in Annex 2.

2. Enter the body in field 111 in the form:
^zAuthority code

3. If more than one body is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples
^z1039
^z223%^z2606

System manager note

1. In the FST for the inverted file, fields 111, 112, and 113 have all been assigned the field identifier 111. To retrieve a corporate body regardless of which of these three fields it is in, use field identifier 111.
Example 1 (manual Corporate Name Authority File)

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, either as author, affiliation, sponsor, or funder, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

Example 2 (computerized Corporate Name Authority Records)

Use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

Note  It is possible to search on words in the main body and sub-body, using the search expression in example 1 above (refer to Annex 19, Section IX — Inversion).

2. The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in fields 111, 112, 113, or 211. Refer to Annex 19, Section V — Display formats for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Subfielded Either ^a Main body or ^z Authority code

^b Sub-body
^c Place
^d Country code

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 112 is used to enter the name of the institution where the author of the item works. It is often useful to be able to contact the author of an article or a paper directly to obtain a copy of the work. If there is more than one personal author, only the affiliation of the first-named author is entered.

SELECTION

1. Enter only one affiliation in field 112. If there is more than one author, enter the affiliation of the first-named author.

2. Do not enter affiliation if it is the same as the corporate author entered in fields 111 or 211, or the same as the body entered in field 113 — Other associated institution(s).

3. If the name of the affiliation is cited on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
   
   • the language of analysis, then
   • the language of the item.

Example 1

The item is a journal article. The author's normal place of work is the Institut Africain de Développement Economique et de Planification.

Enter the Institut Africain de Développement Economique et de Planification in field 112.

Example 2

The item is a conference paper written jointly by two authors. The affiliation of the first named author is the International Planned Parenthood Federation (IPPF) and that of the second author is the United Nations Population Division.

Enter the IPPF in field 112.
Example 3
The item is a chapter from a monograph. The author's normal place of work is the OECD, which is also the corporate author of the monograph. The OECD is entered in field 211 — Corporate author(s) — parent.

Do not enter anything in the affiliation field.

Example 4
The item is the proceedings of a conference sponsored by the IDRC and edited by a staff member of the IDRC. The editor is entered as the personal author. IDRC is entered in field 113 — Other associated institution(s).

Do not enter anything in the affiliation field.

DATA ENTRY

Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File

1. If you are using a manual Corporate Name Authority File (e.g., one in the form of a card index), enter the affiliation as it is found in your authority file. If there is no entry for the body in the authority file, establish an entry according to the rules in Annex 2.

2. Enter the affiliation in the form:
   `^aMain body^bSub-body^cPlace^dCountry code`

3. If there is no sub-body, do not enter subfield b. (See example 3 below.)

4. If there are more than two levels in the hierarchy, enter the second and subsequent levels in subfield b. Separate the sub-bodies in subfield b with a period and a space.

   Note The name of a government is not considered to constitute a hierarchical level on its own. (See example 2 below.)

5. Enter the place where the body is located in subfield c. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in Annex 5.

   Exception Do not enter the place when the body is entered as a subheading under the name of a government. (See example 2 below.)

6. Enter in subfield d the ISO two-letter country code (Annex 10), corresponding to the country where the body is located.

Examples

`^aUniversity of Michigan^bCenter for Research in Economic Development^cAnn Arbor, MI^dUS`

`^aMaroc. Ministère de l'Agriculture et de la Réforme Agraire^dMA`

`^aDeutsche Gesellschaft für Technische Zusammenarbeit^cEschborn^dDE`
Option 2: computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

1. If you have computerized Corporate Name Authority Records linked to the bibliographic records, as described in Section 8 of the Introduction and in Annex 2, enter the appropriate authority code for the body (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in subfield z. This can be found either by retrieving the authority record on-line, or by consulting a printout of the authority records. If there is no authority record for the body, create one following the rules in Annex 2.

2. Enter the body in field 112 in the form:
   `^zAuthority code`

   Example
   `^z2256`

**System Manager Note**

1. In the FST for the inverted file, fields 111, 112, and 113 have all been assigned the field identifier 111. To retrieve a corporate body regardless of which of these three fields it is in, use field identifier 111.

   Example 1 (manual Corporate Name Authority File)
   
   To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, either as author, affiliation, sponsor, or funder, use the search expression:
   `INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)`

   Example 2 (computerized Corporate Name Authority Records)
   
   Use the authority code of the body in the search expression:
   `1023/(111)`

   Note  It is possible to search on words in the main body and sub-body, using the search expression in example 1 above (refer to Annex 19, Section IX — Inversion).

2. The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in fields 111, 112, 113, or 211. Refer to Annex 19, Section V — Display formats for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded Either ^a Main body or ^z Authority code
                           ^b Sub-body
                           ^c Place
                           ^d Country code
                           ^e Role

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

Field 113 is used to enter the names of corporate bodies that:

- funded the work, for example, the funder of a project or meeting,
- sponsored the work, for example, the organizer of a meeting, or
- granted the degree for which a thesis was written.

SELECTION

1. Do not enter in field 113 a body that has already been entered as corporate author in fields 111 or 211 (example 2).

2. Enter each of the bodies cited as having one of the three roles listed under purpose above.

3. When the item is the report of a conference, enter the sponsor or funder of the conference. However, if the item is a paper presented at the conference, do not enter the sponsor or funder of the conference (example 3).

4. If the name of the body appears on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:

   - the language of analysis, then
   - the language of the item.

Example 1

The item is a report of a project funded by the UNDP. It is written by an expert attached to the United Nations Statistical Office. The author of the report is entered in field 110 — Personal author; the UN. Statistical Office is entered in field 112 — Affiliation; the UNDP is entered as funding institution in field 113.

Example 2

The item is a report, written by the FAO, of a meeting that was sponsored by the FAO. The FAO is entered as corporate author in field 111. It is, therefore, not entered in field 113.
Example 3

The item is a paper presented by a researcher attached to the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization at a conference sponsored by the FAO.

The author of the report is entered in field 110 — Personal author; the Commonwealth Scientific and Industrial Research Organization is entered in field 112 — Affiliation. Nothing is entered in field 113.

Example 4

The item is a Ph.D. thesis presented to Harvard University. Enter Harvard University in field 113.

DATA ENTRY

Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File

1. If you are using a manual Corporate Name Authority File (e.g., in the form of a card index), enter the corporate body as it is found in your authority file. If there is no entry for the body in the authority file, establish an entry according to the rules in Annex 2.

2. Enter the body in the form:
\[ ^a\text{Main body}^b\text{Sub-body}^c\text{Place}^d\text{Country code}^e\text{Role} \]

3. If there is no sub-body, do not enter subfield b. (See example 3 below.)

4. If there are more than two levels in the hierarchy, enter the second and subsequent levels in subfield b. Separate the sub-bodies in subfield b with a period and a space.

Note  The name of a government is not considered to constitute a hierarchical level on its own. (See example 2 below.)

5. Enter the place where the body is located in subfield c. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in Annex 5.

Exception  Do not enter the place when the body is entered as a subheading under the name of a government. (See example 2 below.)

6. Enter in subfield d the ISO two-letter country code (Annex 10), corresponding to the country where the body is located.

7. In subfield e, enter one of the following roles (or their equivalents in the language of analysis):
\[ ^e\text{Funder} \]
\[ ^e\text{Sponsor} \]
\[ ^e\text{Degree granting inst.} \]
8. If more than one body is to be entered in the field, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign. If two or more bodies have the same role, enter the role for each body. (See example 4 below.)

**Example 1**

^aUniversité de Clermont I^bCentre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International^cClermont-Ferrand^dFR^eSponsor

**Example 2**

^aMali. Ministère de l'Agriculture^dML^eSponsor

**Example 3**

^aUNDP^cNew York, NY^dUS^eFunder

**Example 4**

^aFAO^cRoma^dIT^eSponsor%^aIAEA^cWien^dAT^eSponsor

**Example 5**

^aHarvard University^cCambridge, MA^dUS^eDegree granting inst.

**Option 2: computerized Corporate Name Authority Records**

1. If you have computerized Corporate Name Authority Records linked to the bibliographic records, as described in Section 8 of the Introduction and in Annex 2, enter the appropriate authority code for the body (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in subfield z. This can be found either by retrieving the authority record on-line, or by consulting a printout of the authority records. If there is no authority record for the body, create one following the rules in Annex 2.

2. Enter the body in field 113 in the form:

^zAuthority code^eRole

3. In subfield e, enter one of the following roles (or their equivalents in the language of analysis):

^eFunder

^eSponsor

^eDegree granting inst.

4. If more than one body is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign. If two or more bodies have the same role, enter the role for each body.

**Examples**

^z5750^eFunder

^z1723^eSponsor%^z540^eSponsor

^z711^eDegree granting inst.
1. In the FST for the inverted file, fields 111, 112, and 113 have all been assigned the field identifier 111. To retrieve a corporate body regardless of which of these three fields it is in, use field identifier 111.

Example 1 (manual Corporate Name Authority File)

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, either as author, affiliation, sponsor or funder, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

Example 2 (computerized Corporate Name Authority Records)

Use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

Note  It is possible to search on words in the main body and sub-body, using the search expression in example 1 above (refer to Annex 19, Section IX — Inversion).

2. The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in fields 111, 112, 113, or 211. Refer to Annex 19, Section V — Display formats for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory (except for subfield e which is Optional)

Repeatable

Subfielded

\^a Meeting name and number
\^b Place
\^c Country code
\^d Dates
\^e Date — ISO form

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the item is associated with a meeting, conference, seminar, workshop, etc., such as a paper presented at a conference, or the proceedings of a meeting, field 114 is used to enter the information about the meeting.

SELECTION

1. Enter one meeting statement for each meeting associated with the item. (For an example of a joint report of two meetings, see example 3 under “Examples of complete field”.)

2. If the item is associated with a meeting that takes place consecutively in more than one location, enter a complete meeting statement for each location. (See example 4 under “Examples of complete field”.)

3. When the meeting name appears in several forms, select the form that is most complete, and that appears to be the official name of the meeting.

4. When the name of the meeting appears in several language versions, select, in order of preference, the language version corresponding to:

   • the language of analysis, then
   • the language best understood by the users.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the meeting statement in the form:
   \^aMeeting name, Number\^bPlace\^cCountry code\^dDates\^eDate — ISO form

2. When more than one meeting is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Subfield a: meeting name and number

1. Capitalize the first letter of each significant word.
2. Omit words at the beginning of the name that indicate frequency, such as "Annual" or "Biennial".

3. Do not begin the name with the meeting number. If the meeting statement includes a number, enter it after the name. Precede the number with a comma and a space.

4. Use the following abbreviations for numbers:
   - English: 1st 2d 3d 4th etc.
   - French: 1er 1ère 2e 3e etc.
   - Spanish: 1o 1a 2o 2a 3o 3a etc.

Subfield b: place

1. Enter the place in which the meeting was held following the guidelines for entering place names in Annex 5.

Subfield c: country code

1. Enter the ISO two-letter country code (Annex 10) for the country in which the meeting was held.

Subfield d: dates

1. Enter the date or the inclusive dates on which the meeting was held in the form:
   - Day Month Year
   - Day–Day Month Year
   - Day Month–Day Month Year
   - Day Month Year–Day Month Year

2. Enter the names of the months in order of preference in:
   - the language of the meeting name, then
   - the language of analysis.

3. Abbreviate the names of the months using the abbreviations in Annex 7.

Examples
   ^d6-11 jun 1988
   ^d9 ago 1986
   ^d30 May-4 Jun 1988
   ^d29 déc 1983-5 jan 1984
Option: subfield e: Date — ISO form

Documentation centres that wish to sort meeting papers by the date of the meeting should adopt subfield e. Enter only the opening date of the meeting in ISO\textsuperscript{20} form.

Enter the opening date in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY is the year, MM is the month and DD is the day.

Example

The dates of the meeting are 30 May–4 Jun 1988.

Enter: ^e1988-05-30

Examples of complete field

Example 1

^aWorkshop on Pasture Improvement Research in Eastern and Southern Africa^bHarare^cZW^d17-21 Sep 1984

Example 2

^aConférence pour la Protection de la Faune, l\'ère^bBangui^cCF^d29 Oct-9 Nov 1986^e1986-10-29

Example 3


Example 4

^aTechnical Meeting on Common Methodologies^bOttawa, ON^cCA^d3-7 Nov 1981^aTechnical Meeting on Common Methodologies^bMont Ste Marie, PQ^cCA^d9-13 Nov 1981

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 25

PURPOSE

Field 120 is used to enter the edition statement found on the item when the item is:
- a second or subsequent edition of a work,
- a draft or preliminary version of the work, or
- an abridged edition.

Note: This field is also entered when the item is a chapter from a monograph or from a collection (bibliographic level AM and AC).

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the edition statement in the language of analysis.
2. Use the following abbreviations:

   a) Numbers:
      - English: 1st 2d 3d 4th etc.
      - French: 1er 2e 3e etc.
      - Spanish: 1o 1a 2o 2a 3o 3a etc.

   b) Words:
      - abbreviated: abbr.
      - abrégée, abreviada: abr.
      - aumentada: aum.
      - borrador: borr.
      - corrected, corrigée, corregida: corr.
      - enlarged: enl.
      - revised, revue, revisada: rev.
      - révisée: rév.
      - preliminary version: prelim. version
      - version préliminaire: v. prél.
      - versión preliminar: v. prel.

Examples

   3d rev. ed. Prelim. version
   French: 2e éd. V. prél. 3e éd. rév. et corr.
   Spanish: 2a ed. V. prel. 3a ed. aum. y corr.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Subfielded

^a Publication place
^b Publisher
^c Country code

Maximum length 250

PURPOSE

Field 121 is used to enter the name and location of the body responsible for publishing or issuing the item.

Exception This field is left empty if the item is an article from a periodical (bibliographic level AS).

SELECTION

1. When the item is an article from a periodical (i.e., with bibliographic level AS) leave field 121 empty.

2. When the item is a monograph or a collection, or part of a monograph or collection (i.e., with bibliographic level AM, AC, M, C, MC, or MS) enter the body cited on the item as being the publisher.

3. If more than one publisher is mentioned on the item, enter the one that appears most prominently, or the one that appears first. Mention of the other publisher may be made in a note (field 150).

4. When no publisher is mentioned on the item, enter the name of the issuing body, i.e., the institution at which the item was produced.

5. When the name of the issuing body can not be determined, enter s.n. (which is an abbreviation for the Latin phrase sine nomine, meaning without name).

DATA ENTRY

Enter the field in the form:

^aPlace^bPublisher^cCountry code

Subfield a: publication place

1. Enter the place where the item was published or issued, i.e., the location of the publisher or issuing body selected for this field.
2. Follow the guidelines for entering place names in Annex 5.

3. If the publisher has more than one location, select the place mentioned most prominently, or the one mentioned first.

4. If no place is mentioned, enter the probable place, enclosed in parentheses.

5. If a probable place of publication or issue can not be determined, enter s.l. (abbreviation of the Latin phrase sine loco, meaning no place).

Subfield b: publisher

1. Enter the name of the publisher in the shortest form in which it can be understood and identified internationally.

2. If the publisher is a body already entered in another field, such as the corporate author field, or the monographic series statement, enter an abbreviated form of the name of the body in the publisher field.

3. Omit words such as Company, Limited, Incorporated, or Publisher, and their equivalents in other languages.

4. When the publisher name contains several hierarchical levels, enter the levels in the order shown on the item. Omit levels that are not necessary to identify the body (example 5).

Example 1

The publisher is the American Library Association. The body has already been entered in full in the corporate author field.

Enter: ^bALA

Example 2

The publisher's name appears as Faber and Faber.

Enter: ^bFaber

Example 3

The publisher's name appears as Sansoni Editore.

Enter: ^bSansoni

Example 4

The publisher's name appears as Institute for Small-Scale Industries, University of the Philippines

Enter: ^bInstitute for Small-Scale Industries, University of the Philippines.
Example 5

The name of the issuing body appears as Direction Nationale de la Statistique et de l'Informatique, Ministère du Plan.

Enter: `^bDirection Nationale de la Statistique et de l'Informatique`

Subfield c: country code

Enter the ISO two-letter country code (Annex 10) corresponding to the country of publication.

Examples of complete field

`^aChicago, IL`^bALA`^cUS
`^aGenève`^bBIT`^cCH
`^aAnn Arbor, MI`^bUniversity Microfilms`^cUS
`^aKuala Lumpur`^bAsian and Pacific Development Centre`^cMY
`^a(Addis Ababa)`^bPopulation Division, ECA`^cET
`^as.l.`^bs.n.`^cIN

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, a space, a colon, and a space (:) are supplied in front of subfield b (AACR2 and ISBD punctuation).

Example

London : Butterworths
CHARACTERISTICS

Essential

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 30

PURPOSE

Field 122 is used to enter the date of publication or issue of the item. In addition, this date is entered in standardized form in field 123.

SELECTION

1. When the item is:
   - a monograph or collection, enter the date of the edition in hand;
   - a collection, of which the various volumes bear different dates, enter the first and last years, separated by a hyphen;
   - part of a monograph, enter the date of publication of the monograph;
   - an unpublished item, enter the date as found on the item;
   - a thesis, enter the date of submission; or
   - a periodical article, enter the date of the periodical issue.

2. The date of publication or issue is usually found on the back of the title page. However, it may also be found on the cover, on the title page, in the preface, at the end of the text, on the back cover, or elsewhere on the item.

3. When a full date is provided on the item (i.e., day/month/year, or month/year, or season/year) enter the full date.

4. When both an edition date and the date of printing are mentioned, select the date of the edition in hand (example 1).

5. When no date of publication or issue appears on the item, select a probable date, which will be the most recent date cited in the tables, the bibliography, etc. plus 1 year. Enter the probable date in parentheses (example 6).

Example 1


Enter the date of the most recent edition: 1980
Example 2
The item is a three-volume work of which the first volume was published in 1984, the second in 1985, and the third in 1986.
Enter: 1984-1986

Example 3
The item is a typewritten report. The date 2nd October 1985 appears on the cover page.
Enter: 2 Oct 1985

Example 4
The item is a periodical article appearing in the January 1987 issue of *Tropical doctor*.
Enter: Jan 1987

Example 5
The item is a periodical article. The date of the periodical issue is “Spring 1988”.
Enter: Spring 1988

Example 6
The item is undated. The most recent entry in the bibliography appended to the item is dated 1985. You judge that the probable date of issue is 1986.
Enter: (1986)

**DATA ENTRY**

1. Enter the names of months in the language of analysis. Use the abbreviations of names of months in Annex 7.

2. Enter the names of seasons in full in the language of analysis.

3. When a probable date has been supplied by the documentalist, enter it in parentheses.

**Examples**
- 1980
- 1984-1986
- Jan 1987
- Hiver 1988
- 6 jun 1988
- (1985)
CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 123 is used to enter the date of publication or issue of the item in a form that will facilitate on-line retrieval, i.e., following the international standard for writing dates in all-numeric form.\(^\text{21}\)

It is entered in addition to field 122 — Date of publication/issue — Free form.

SELECTION

1. Select the date that was selected for entry in field 122.

2. When the entry in field 122 includes a first and last date, enter only the last date in field 123.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the date in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY is the year, MM is the month, and DD the day.

Examples

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Date in free form</th>
<th>Date in ISO form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1980</td>
<td>1980-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1984-1986</td>
<td>1986-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 Oct 1985</td>
<td>1985-10-02</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jan 1987</td>
<td>1987-01-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spring 1988 (published in the Northern Hemisphere)</td>
<td>1988-04-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(1986)</td>
<td>1986-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1-7 Apr 1976</td>
<td>1976-04-07</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Field 123 is used for retrieval on date. It is not included in the display format for the user. Retrieval on this field should normally be done using the right-truncation feature in MICRO-ISIS.

Examples

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Subfielded

^a Number of pages/pieces
^b Description
^c Dimensions

Maximum length 40

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a monograph or a collection, field 130 is used to enter the physical description of the item.

Note 1 Do not use field 130 for a chapter from a book or a collection, or for an article from a periodical (bibliographic level AM, AC, or AS). Instead, use field 131 — Part statement.

Note 2 When the item is one volume of a collection (bibliographic level MC), enter the pagination and description of the item in field 130 and the volume number in field 131 — Part statement.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the collation in the language of analysis.

2. Enter the field in the form:

   ^aNumber of pages/pieces^bDescription^cDimensions

Subfield a: number of pages/pieces

1. When the item is:

   • a monograph, enter the number of pages in the main sequence of numbered pages;
   • a monograph with several sequences of numbered pages, enter the total number of pages, or, if this can not be done readily, enter “1 v. (various pagings)”, or its equivalent in the language of analysis;
   • a monograph with unnumbered pages, count the number of pages. If this cannot be done readily, enter an approximate number and precede the number by the abbreviation ca.

   Note This rule also applies to a reprint that was originally part of a larger item, and that retains the original pagination. (See field 140 — Monographic series, selection, paragraph 3.)

   • a loose-leaf publication, enter the number of volumes, and the designation “(loose-leaf)”, or its equivalent in the language of analysis;
   • a collection, enter the number of volumes;
• **cartographic material**, enter the number and type of physical pieces; or
• **audiovisual material**, enter the number and type of physical pieces, and, where applicable, the duration.

2. Use the following abbreviations:
   - pages, paginas **p.**
   - volumes, volumen **v.**
   - minutes **min.**

Enter designations such as microfiches, sound cassettes, and film reels, in full in the language of analysis.

3. Leave one space after the number.

**Examples**

\*a194 p.\n\*aca. 100 p.\n\*a1 v. (various pagings)\n\*a1 v. (paginación variada)\n\*a1 v. (paginations multiples)\n\*a1 v. (loose-leaf)\n\*a3 v.\n\*a15 maps\n\*a1 sound cassette (60 min.)\n\*a1 film reel (30 min.)\n\*a1 videocassette (24 min.)

**Subfield b: description**

1. Enter in **subfield b** notes concerning the presence of illustrations, maps, tables, bibliographies, etc., and, for audiovisual material, notes concerning colour, sound characteristics, etc.

2. Enter notes concerning accompanying material in **field 150 — Notes**.

3. Use appropriate abbreviations in the language of analysis.

4. Separate each element by a comma and a space.

**Examples**

\*bill.\n\*bill., maps\n\*bbibliog. p. 170-179\n\*bgraphs, 55 ref.\n\*bsd., b&w
Subfield c: dimensions

Subfield c is used to enter the dimensions of audiovisual material. Its use for recording the dimensions of printed material is optional.

Example

^c16 mm.

Examples of complete field

^a163 p.
^a300 p.^b150 ref.
^a2 v.^bmaps, tables
^a1 film reel (12 min.)^bsd., col.^c16 mm.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, subfield b is preceded by a space, a colon, and a space; and subfield c is preceded by a space, a semicolon, and a space (AACR2 and ISBD punctuation).

Example

1 film reel (12 min.) : sd., col. ; 16 mm.
PART STATEMENT

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Subfielded  

\(^a\) Volume/issue no.  
\(^b\) Pagination of part

Maximum length 40

PURPOSE

Field 131 is used to enter:

- the pagination of a chapter within a book (bibliographic level AM) or multivolume work (bibliographic level AC);
- the volume and issue number and pagination of an article from a periodical (bibliographic level AS); or
- the volume number, when the item is one volume of a multivolume work (bibliographic level MC), or a chapter from a multivolume work (bibliographic level AC).

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the field in the form:

\(^a\)Volume/issue no.\(^b\)Pagination

Subfield a: volume/issue no.

1. When the item is an article from a periodical, enter the volume and issue number of the periodical in subfield a.

2. When the item is a single volume from a collection, enter the volume number in subfield a.

3. When the item is a chapter from one volume of a collection, enter the volume number in subfield a.

4. When the item is a part of a monograph, leave subfield a empty.

5. Use the abbreviations v. for volume and no. for number.

6. Leave one space before the number.

Examples

\(^a\)av. 17, no. 3
\(^a\)no. 52
\(^a\)av. 2
Subfield b: pagination of part

1. When the item is an article from a periodical or a chapter from a monograph or a collection, enter the first and last pages covered by the item in subfield b.

2. If the item covers more than one series of pages, enter the pagination as in the second example in paragraph 4 below.

3. If the item is a volume from a collection, leave subfield b empty. Enter its volume number in subfield a of field 131 and the pagination of the volume in field 130. (See examples of complete field, no. 4 below.)

4. Leave one space after the abbreviation p. Separate the first and last page number with a hyphen.

Examples

^bp. 125-136
^bp. 17-24, 38, 51-52

Examples of complete field

Example 1

The item is an article appearing on pages 169 to 180 of Community development journal, volume 21, number 3.

Field 131: ^av. 21, no. 3^bp. 169-180

Example 2

The item is a chapter appearing on pages 7 to 22 of a monograph.

Field 131: ^bp. 7-22

Example 3

The item is a chapter covering pages 55-70 of volume 2 of a three-volume work.

Field 131: ^av. 2^bp. 55-70

Example 4

The item is the first volume of a two volume work. It contains 342 pages.

Field 131: ^av. 1
Field 130: ^a342 p.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Repeatable
Subfielded  Either  ^a Series title  or  ^z Authority code
^b Series part  ^b Series part

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 140 is used to enter the series title and part number when the item being catalogued is part of a monographic series.

DEFINITION

A monographic series is a group of monographs issued in succession, intended to be continued indefinitely, and related to one another by the fact that each one bears, in addition to its own title, a common title and, usually, a volume number. The volumes have separate pagination.

Examples

World Bank staff working paper
Industrial development review series
NIEPA occasional paper
Monographs on communication planning
Estudios e informes de la CEPAL

SELECTION

1. Select one monographic series statement for each series of which the item is part.

2. If the monographic series title appears in more than one form on the item, choose the form found in the Serials Authority File (SAF).

3. If the item is a reprint of a periodical article, or of a chapter from a book, and is now issued in a reprint series, enter the series statement in field 140, the date of the reprint in fields 122 and 123, and the collation in field 130. Enter information concerning the item’s original source (periodical title or monograph title, part statement and date) as a note in field 150. (See example 4 below.)

Note  When a reprint that was originally part of a larger item retains the pagination of the original, count the number of pages, and enter the total in field 130.
Example 1

The item bears two monographic series statements — World Employment Programme research working papers and Population and employment working paper no. 10.

Enter both series statements in field 140.

Example 2

The title of the monographic series appears in two different forms on the item — RFFPI family planning evaluation manuals and Family planning research and evaluation manual. The SAF shows that the first-mentioned title is the established form.

Select: RFFPI family planning evaluation manuals

Example 3

The monographic series statement appears on the item in both English and French — Terminology bulletin no. 327 and Bulletin de terminologie no. 327. The SAF shows that the English version of the title is the established form.

Select: Terminology bulletin

Example 4

The item originally appeared on pages 85–96 of Population studies, volume 27, number 1, March 1973. It has now appeared as number 58 in the Population reprint series issued by the Department of Population Planning of the University of Michigan.

Field 140: ^aPopulation reprint series - University of Michigan, Department of Population Planning^bno. 58
Field 130: ^al2 p.

DATA ENTRY

Option 1: manual Serials Authority File

1. Enter the field in the form:
   ^aSeries title^bSeries part

2. When more than one series statement is being entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Subfield a: series title

1. In subfield a, enter the series title as found in the SAF. If the title is not in the SAF, create an entry following the rules in Annex 4.

2. Capitalize the first word of the series title, proper names, and significant words in the names of corporate bodies.
When the name of the issuing body is added after the title, precede the name of the issuing body with a space dash space (-).

**Subfield b: series part**

1. Enter the series part in **subfield b** as it is found on the item, except:
   - for the part designations, use abbreviations such as v. (for volume), no. (for number), and pt. (for part); and
   - convert Roman numerals to Arabic numbers.

**Option**

Those documentation centres that wish to produce printed monographic series indexes should adopt the following rule:

To ensure that the volume numbers are sorted correctly in a monographic series index, enter the volume number as a three-digit number, e.g., enter 7 as 007.

2. Include such terms as “special issue”, “new series”, etc. (or their equivalents in other languages), when these are part of the numbering.

3. Leave one space between the part designation and the number. Separate volume and part numbers with a comma and a space.

4. If the item spans several numbers within the series, separate the numbers with a hyphen.

**Examples**

- new ser., no. 1
- nouv. sér., no. 10
- v. 4, pt. 2
- Bd. 10, Hf. 3
- no. 25-26
- no. 88-4
- v. 9
- v. 11, special issue

**Examples of complete field**

- ^aManagement development series^bno. 24
- ^aWorld Employment Programme research working paper^bPopulation and employment working paper^bno. 10
- ^aResearch report - International Food Policy Research Institute^bno. 49

**Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records**

1. In a system where computerized Serials Authority Records have been entered into the bibliographic database, instead of entering the series title in full, enter its authority code (i.e.,
the MNF of the serials authority record) in **subfield z**. In printed output, the code will be replaced by the full title of the series, as explained in Section 8 of the Introduction and in Annex 4.

2. Enter the field in the form:
   `^zAuthority code^bSeries part`

3. Enter the series part following the rules for **subfield b** under Option 1 above.
   
   **Example**
   
   The item is number 150 in the *CSC Technical Publication Series*. The authority code for this title is 1850.
   
   Enter: `^z1850^bno. 150`

**SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE**

In the display format, a space, a semicolon, and a space are inserted in front of **subfield b** (AACR2 and ISBD punctuation).

**Example**

Management development series; no. 24
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Subfielded

\(^a\) Thesis designation
\(^b\) Degree
\(^c\) Course
\(^d\) Number

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a thesis, field 141 is used to enter information pertaining to the degree and/or course for which the thesis was presented. The field has been structured in such a way as to allow for variations in the way theses are described in different educational systems.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the thesis statement as it is found on the item, in the form:
   \(^a\)Thesis designation\(^b\)Degree\(^c\)Course\(^d\)Number

2. Enter the name of the university granting the degree in field 113 — Other associated institution(s).

3. Enter the year of presentation in field 122 — Date of publication/issue — Free form and field 123 — Date of publication/issue — ISO form.

4. In subfield a, enter the term used on the item itself to describe the thesis.

   Examples
   
   \(^a\)Thesis
   \(^a\)Thèse
   \(^a\)Dissertation
   \(^a\)Mémoire de Diplôme

5. In subfield b, enter the degree for which the thesis was presented in the form found on the item. If no degree is mentioned, leave subfield b empty.

   Examples
   
   \(^b\)Ph.D.
   \(^b\)Doctorat d'Etat
   \(^b\)Doctorat 3e cycle
   \(^b\)M.Sc.
6. In subfield c, enter the course for which the thesis was prepared, if it is part of the thesis statement. If no course is mentioned, leave subfield c empty.

Examples

^cDroit économique
^cSciences naturelles

7. In subfield d, enter the thesis number if it is included in the thesis statement. If no number is mentioned, leave subfield d empty.

Example

^d421

Examples of complete field

^aThesis^bPh.D.
^aThesis^bM.Sc.^cAdministration
^aThèse^cSciences naturelles^d421
^aMémoire de fin d'études de cycle de spécialisation^cPhytotechnie - amélioration des plantes

System manager note

In the display format, a comma and a space are inserted in front of subfields b, c, and d.

Examples

Thesis, M.Sc., Administration
Thèse, Sciences naturelles, 421
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Repeatable

Subfielded

\^a Project name
\^b Project number

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

When the item is an official project document, or a report describing work carried out under a project, field 142 is used to identify the project.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the field in the form:
   \^aProject name\^bProject number

2. Enter the official form of the project name in subfield a.

3. Capitalize each main word in the name of the project.

4. Enter the official project number in subfield b exactly as it is found on the item.

Option

If the project number is used as a retrieval element, punctuation within the project number should be consistent. For example, if the elements of the numbers are sometimes separated with slashes and sometimes with hyphens, a decision should be made to adopt either slashes or hyphens.

5. When the item pertains to more than one project, enter the name and number of each of the projects. Separate multiple occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

\^aOperational Support to Transmigration Schemes
\^aLake Basin River Catchment Development\^bKEN-82-001
\^bRLA674/024
\^bIND-82-026\%^bIND-82-015
\^aAssistance à la Planification\^bZAI-79-002\%^aAppui à la Cellule de Coopération et des Ressources Extérieures\^bZAI-84-011
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 700

PURPOSE

Field 150 is used to enter descriptive information that does not come into the scope of the other fields.

SELECTION

Enter the following kinds of information in field 150:

- Notes concerning translations: Enter the original title or enter the language of the original and, if available, the name of the translator;
- Notes relating to the original version when the item is a reprint;
- Notes regarding the form of the item;
- Notes describing accompanying material;
- Notes regarding the library’s copy of the item; and
- Any other information that the documentalist judges important enough to be included in the record.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the notes in the language of analysis.

2. Enter a period and a space after each note except the last.

Examples

Translation of Donde no hay doctor
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud
5 1/4" diskette in back pocket
Originally published in Contemporary Southeast Asia, v. 8, no. 2, Sep 1986, p. 131-150
Unpublished typescript
Also available on microfiche
Photocopy. Library has v. 1 only
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 13

PURPOSE

Field 160 is used to enter the International Standard Book Number (ISBN) of the item.

Note The ISBN is also entered when the item is a chapter from a monograph or a collection (bibliographic level AM or AC).

DEFINITION

The ISBN is a code that uniquely identifies the title, or edition of the title, to which it is assigned. The code is a 10-digit number divided into four parts of various lengths separated by hyphens. It is usually found with the publisher information on the back of the title page, but may be found on the back cover, or on any other part of the item.

Example


SELECTION

1. If more than one ISBN appears on the item, enter the one relating to the item in hand.

Example

The item in hand is the paperback edition with the ISBN statement on it:
ISBN 0-8389-3211-8 pbk

Enter: 0-8389-3211-8

2. When a single record has been created for a collection, each volume of which has a separate ISBN, enter each ISBN.
DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the ISBN as it is found on the item. Replace any spaces or other punctuation within the number with hyphens.

   **Example**
   
   ISBN on the item: 0 907853 10 2
   
   Enter: 0-907853-10-2

2. Do not enter the prefix "ISBN". (This is supplied in the display format.)

3. If more than one ISBN is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

   **Examples**
   
   0-19-529710-5
   
   0-553-23249-5%0-553-24496-5
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 50

PURPOSE

Field 161 is used to enter the document or report number(s) assigned to the item by the issuing organization. It is also used to enter the number known as a symbol on official United Nations documents.

Note  The document number is also entered when the item is a chapter of a monograph or collection that has a document number (bibliographic level AM or AC).

DEFINITION

A document number, report number, or document symbol is a combination of letters and numbers that provides a unique identification to items issued by an organization. It usually includes the acronym of the organization, or of the department within the organization, that issued the item; and it is generally located prominently on the title page or cover of the item.

Example

ST/ESA/SER.R/102

SELECTION

1. If the item bears more than one document number, enter each number.

2. Do not treat a string of initials or acronyms that does not contain a number as a document number.

Example

NRD/WR/Unesco/WHO/ECA is not a document number.

3. Do not confuse document numbers with:

- monographic series statements;
- contract or grant numbers, which are usually identified as such;
- sales numbers; or
- job numbers, which are often found on United Nations material, usually on the back cover.
Example 1

The document symbol ST/ESA/SER.R/79 appears in the top right-hand corner of the title page of a report by the United Nations Department of International Economic and Social Affairs.

Field 161: ST/ESA/SER.R/79

Example 2

On the back of the title page of a document from the United Nations Economic Commission for Latin America, there appears the symbol E/CEPAL/G.1224. On the back cover, the number 82-10-2189 appears. The latter is the job number. Do not enter it in the record.

Field 161: E/CEPAL/G.1224

Example 3

The item is a United Nations publication. On the back of the title page the following numbers appear:

Sales No. E.85.1.15
    03500C
    02500P

Do not select these numbers for entry in field 161.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the document number exactly as it is found on the item, including spaces and punctuation.

2. If more than one document number is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

PGI-84/WS/4
IDRC-TS40e
IESA/P/POPIN/G/4
DP/UN/LES-71-503/8%DP/UN/LES-73-029/9
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 100

PURPOSE

Field 162 is used in the following circumstances:

1. In information systems that do not provide a document-delivery service, field 162 is used to enter information on where the item can be obtained if it is not available from the issuing body or through normal commercial channels.

2. In information systems that include restricted material, field 162 is used to indicate that access to the item is restricted, and the name of the agency from whom permission to use the item can be requested.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. When the item is not available from the issuing body or through normal commercial channels, enter the name or acronym of the organization from which the item can be obtained, its address, the form in which it can be obtained, and the price. When mentioning the price, indicate the currency either by entering it in full or by using the ISO currency codes.\(^\text{22}\)

   Enter the field in the form:

   Organization name, address; form; price

   Example

   Institut d’Economie Quantitative, 27 rue de Liban, 1002 Tunis Belvédère, Tunisia; microfiche; 15 TND

2. When access to the item is restricted (i.e., when such terms as “Limited distribution”, “For internal use”, “Classified”, “Confidential”, or “Restricted” appear on the item), enter the designation Restr. Add the name and address of the organization responsible for granting or obtaining permission to use the item if this organization is not the issuing body.

---

Enter the field in the form:
Restr. Organization name, address.

Examples
Restr.
Restr. UN Dept. of Technical Co-operation for Development, 1 UN Plaza, New York, NY 10017, USA

3. When the item is restricted, also enter the appropriate descriptor, e.g., <RESTRICTED DOCUMENTS>, in field 301 — Secondary descriptors. This allows restricted items to be excluded in an on-line search or in printed outputs if so desired.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Either Not subfielded or Subfielded *z Authority code

Maximum length 400

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is an article from a serial (bibliographic level AS), field 200 is used to enter the title of the serial.

Note The title of a monographic series is not entered here, but in field 140.

SELECTION

1. Select one serial title for entry in field 200.

2. When the serial has more than one title, choose the title found in the Serials Authority File (SAF).

3. If the serial has changed title, enter the title of the serial at the time the article appeared in it.

4. Enter the volume and issue number in which the article appears, and its pagination, in field 131 — Part statement. Enter the date of the serial issue in field 122 — Date of publication/issue — Free form and field 123 — Date of publication/issue — ISO form.

DATA ENTRY

Option 1: manual Serials Authority File

1. Enter the title of the serial as found in the Serials Authority File (SAF). If the title does not appear in the SAF, create an entry for it following the rules in Annex 4.

2. Capitalize the first word of the serial title, proper nouns, and each significant word in the names of corporate bodies.

3. If the first word in the title is an article ("a", "an", "the", or their equivalents in other languages), drop the initial article, unless this would change the sense of the title. If the article is retained, enclose it in triangular brackets so that it will be ignored for filing purposes. (The triangular brackets will not appear in printed output destined for the user.)

4. When the serial title consists of a generic term followed by the name of the issuing body, separate the two elements with a space, a dash, and a space.
5. When the serial is a supplement to, or a series within, a serial, separate the main title from the supplement or series title with a period and a space.

6. Do not enter a period at the end of the field.

Examples

Library Association record
Bulletin de liaison du Comité Interafricain d'Etudes Hydrauliques
IDRC reports
Library quarterly
<Der> deutsche Apotheker
Journal of polymer science. Part A, General papers
Economic report - Somali National Bank

Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records

In a system where computerized Serials Authority Records have been entered into the bibliographic database, enter only the authority code (i.e., the MFN of the serial authority record) in subfield z. In printed output, the code will be replaced by the full title of the serial, as explained in Section 8 of the Introduction and in Annex 4.

Example

The item is an article from the periodical Jeune Afrique. The authority code for this serial is 4007.

Field 200: ^z4007

Example of a set of fields used to describe part of a serial

The item is a periodical article entitled “Women, poverty and agricultural growth in India”. It appeared in volume 13, number 4, of Journal of peasant studies, in July 1986. The article covered pages 165 to 220.

Option 1: manual Serials Authority File

Title (100): Women, poverty and agricultural growth in India
Title of serial (200): Journal of peasant studies
ISSN (201): 0306-6150
Part statement (131): ^av. 13, no. 4^bp. 165-220
Date of publication/issue
   — free form (122): Jul 1986
   — ISO form (123): 1986-07-00
Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records

Title (100): Women, poverty and agricultural growth in India
Title of serial (200): ^z4008
Part statement (131): ^av. 13, no. 4^bp. 165-220
Date of publication/issue
  — free form (122): Jul 1986
Date of publication/issue
  — ISO form (123): 1986-07-00

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

1. In printed output, using option 2, fields 911 and 912 of the serials authority record will be printed instead of fields 200 and 201.

2. If option 2 has been used, retrieval may be carried out on this field using either title words or the authority code for the serial title.
**CHARACTERISTICS**

- Mandatory
- Not repeatable
- Not subfielded
- Maximum length 9

**PURPOSE**

When a serial title has been entered in field 200, field 201 is used to enter its International Standard Serial Number (ISSN).

**DEFINITION**

The ISSN is an eight-character code divided into two groups of four characters separated by a hyphen. It is assigned by the national or regional centres of the International Serials Data System (ISDS) to provide a unique identification to a serial.

**Examples**

- 0024-2519
- 0072-193X

**SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY**

**Option 1: manual Serials Authority File**

1. Enter the ISSN as it is found in the Serials Authority File (SAF).
2. Do not enter the letters ISSN in front of the number. (These can be supplied in the display format.)
3. If an ISSN can not be found either in the SAF, on the item, or in a serials directory, leave the field empty.

**Example**

The item is an article from an issue of *Journal of peasant studies*, the ISSN of which is 0306-6150.

**Field 200:** Journal of peasant studies  
**Field 201:** 0306-6150

**Option 2: computerized Serials Authority Records**

If an authority code has been entered in field 200 instead of the serial title (see field 200 — Data entry, option 2) do not enter anything in field 201. In printed output, the field in the authority record containing the ISSN will be printed instead of field 201.
Example

The item is an article from the periodical *Food and nutrition bulletin*. The authority code for the periodical has been entered in field 200. The authority record also contains the ISSN of the periodical. Do not enter anything in field 201.

When the bibliographic record for the item is printed, the serial title and ISSN will appear as:

*Food and nutrition bulletin (ISSN 0379-5721)*
TITLE OF PARENT (M/C) 202

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the item is a chapter from a monograph or a collection, or a volume from a collection (with bibliographic level AM, AC, or MC), field 202 is used to enter the title of the parent item.

SELECTION

1. Enter the title that is found on the title page of the parent item.

2. If there is no title page, select the title from the cover, half title page, spine, or other part of the parent. If the title is cited in different ways on these parts of the parent, choose the title by which it is most likely to be known.

3. If there are several language versions of the title, choose, in order of preference:
   - the language of analysis,
   - the language best understood by the users, then
   - the title cited first on the title page.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the guidelines for data entry under field 100 — Title.

Example of a set of fields used to describe a chapter from a monograph

The item is a chapter, entitled "Rural energy systems in Indonesia", extracted from a monograph entitled Integrated rural energy planning.

Title (100): Rural energy systems in Indonesia
Title of parent (M/C) (202): Integrated rural energy planning
Publisher (121): ^aGuildford^bButterworths^cGB
Date of publication/issue — free form (122): 1985
Date of publication/issue — ISO form (123): 1985-00-00
Part statement (131): ^bp. 39-68
Example of a set of fields used to describe a chapter from a collection

The item is a contribution, entitled "Automatic data processing, library and information center applications", taken from volume 2 of a collection entitled Encyclopedia of library and information science.

Title (100): Automatic data processing, library and information center applications
Title of parent (M/C) (202): Encyclopedia of library and information science
Publisher (121): ^aNew York, NY^bDekker^cUS
Date of publication/issue — free form (122): 1969
Date of publication/issue — ISO form (123): 1969-00-00
Part statement (131): ^av. 2^bp. 184-230

Example of a set of fields used to describe a monograph from a collection

The item, entitled Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems, is the first volume of a two-volume collection entitled Recommended methods for development-information systems.

Title (100): Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems
Title of parent (M/C) (202): Recommended methods for development-information systems
Publisher (121): ^aOttawa, ON^bIDRC^cCA
Date of publication/issue — free form (122): 1982
Date of publication/issue — ISO form (123): 1982-00-00
Part statement (131): ^av. 1
Collation (M/C) (130): ^a272 p.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded
^a Personal author
^b Role

Maximum length 80

PURPOSE

When the item being catalogued is a chapter or contribution from a monograph, field 210 is used to enter the name of the person or persons responsible for the intellectual content of the parent item — usually the editor or the compiler of the work.

SELECTION

1. Enter the name of each author, editor, or compiler of the parent item.

2. Do not select the names of translators or illustrators, unless the item is likely to be looked for under these names.

3. Do not select the names of persons responsible only for the foreword or the preface.

Example

The item is a study by J. Lundqvist that is part of a monograph entitled Rice societies: Asian problems and prospects, edited by I. Norlund, S. Cederroth, and I. Gerdin.

Enter the names of the three editors in field 210.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the names in the order in which they appear on the parent item.

2. Enter the field in the form:
   ^aPersonal author^bRole

3. When there is more than one author, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Subfield a: personal author

1. If you are using a personal name authority file, enter the name as it is found in the authority file.

2. If the name is not in the authority file, or if you are not using an authority file, follow the rules in Annex 1: Guidelines for personal author names.
3. Precede each personal author name with the subfield delimiter ^a.

Examples

^aWeekes Vagliani, Winifred
^aSeung, Han Lee
^aEl-Sawy, M.F.

Subfield b: role

1. Enter the role only if the person is an editor or a compiler.
2. Enter the abbreviations ed. or comp.
3. Precede the role with the subfield delimiter ^b.

Examples of complete field

^aFarmer, George^bcomp.
^aEl Mahgary, Y.^bed.%^aBiswan, A.K.^bed.
^aNorlund, I.^bed.%^aCederroth, S.^bed.%^aGerdin, I.^bed.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Repeatable

Subfielded Either ^a Main body or ^z Authority code
^b Sub-body
^c Place
^d Country code

Maximum length 500

PURPOSE

When the item is a chapter or contribution from a monograph or a collection, field 211 is used to enter the name of each corporate body that has intellectual responsibility for the parent item.

Note 1 Names of meetings, conferences, workshops, etc. are not entered here, but in field 114 — Meeting(s).

Note 2 Names of projects are not entered here, but in field 142 — Project(s).

SELECTION

1. Enter each body that is cited on the parent as having intellectual responsibility for the parent item.

2. Do not enter the names of bodies that only published, sponsored, or funded the parent item.

3. If the name of the body is cited on the item in more than one official language version, select, in order of preference, the version corresponding to:
   
   • the language of analysis, then
   • the language of the item.

4. Do not enter the corporate author of the parent item if it has already been entered in field 111 as corporate author of the part that is being described.

Example 1

The item is a chapter, by M. Lukumbuzya, in a monograph entitled *Africa: priorities, problems and prospects*, by the University of Ottawa.

Enter University of Ottawa in field 211
Example 2

The item is one of a set of conference papers published as a monograph under the title *Crisis and recovery in sub-Saharan Africa*, edited by Tore Rose and published by the OECD. The conference was sponsored by three organizations.

Enter the name of the editor in field 210,
Enter the name, place and date of the conference in field 114, and
Do not enter any corporate body in field 211.

However, in the record for the whole monograph, enter the names of the three sponsoring organizations in field 113 — Other associated institution(s).

Example 3

The item is a conference paper prepared by the International Labour Office (ILO) extracted from a set of conference papers edited and issued by the ILO.

Enter the ILO as the corporate author of the part being described in field 111, and
Do not enter anything in field 211.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under field 111.

Examples

**Option 1: manual Corporate Name Authority File**

```
^aILO^bWorld Employment Programme^cGeneva^dCH
^aUniversity of Ottawa^cOttawa, ON^dCA
^aInternational Institute of Tropical Agriculture^cIbadan^dNG^%^aUniversity of Ife^bInstitute of Agricultural Research and Training^cIbadan^dNG
```

**Option 2: computerized corporate name authority records**

```
^Z1039
^Z223%^Z2606
```

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

The display formats provided on the diskette use a CDS/ISIS PASCAL language exit to provide the punctuation between the subfields. The language imposes a limit of 255 characters to data passed to the exit. Problems may occur if more than 255 characters are entered in any occurrence in fields 111, 112, 113, or 211. Refer to Annex 19, Section V — Display formats for more information and an alternate method of formatting corporate names.
CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 300 is used to enter the descriptors that describe the main subject of the item, and that are suitable as headings in a subject index.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see System manager note 2 below, and Annex 3.

SELECTION

1. Select the descriptors from the thesaurus used by the information system.
2. Follow the guidelines for selecting descriptors in Annex 3.
3. Select up to six primary descriptors.
4. Select only those descriptors that would be meaningful as headings in a subject index.
5. Do not select the following types of descriptors:
   - those that are useful only when combined with other descriptors during on-line retrieval, e.g., CASE STUDIES, ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS, STATISTICAL TABLES; and
   - those that indicate the form of the document, e.g., PROJECT REPORTS, CONFERENCE PAPERS.

These types of descriptors are entered in field 301 — Secondary descriptors.

6. Do not enter geographic descriptors (names of countries, regions, and continents) in field 300. These are entered in field 302 — Geographic descriptors.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter each descriptor exactly as it appears in the thesaurus. Do not abbreviate it or alter the spelling and punctuation in any way.

Examples

NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORDER
ARAB ORGANIZATIONS
LABOUR FORCE
MIDDLE-SIZED TOWNS
BREAST FEEDING
ENCYCLOPAEDIAS

2. Enter the descriptors in upper case,\textsuperscript{23} enclosed in triangular brackets. Do not leave any spaces between the descriptors.

\textbf{Examples}

\texttt{<TELECOMMUNICATIONS><TECHNOLOGY TRANSFER>}
\texttt{<POPULATION AGRICOLE><CONSCIENCE DE CLASSE><IDEOLOGIES>}

3. When writing the descriptors on the input sheet, do not divide a word across two lines.

\textbf{Example}

\texttt{enter ............................................<POPULATION FORECASTS>}
\texttt{not ............................................<POPULATION FORECASTS>}

\textbf{SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE}

1. In the display format, fields 300 to 304 are printed following each other, so that they appear to be a single field. A space, a dash, and a space are inserted before field 301 to indicate that the descriptors appearing before the dash are the primary descriptors. In MICRO-ISIS, the use of either header mode or data mode automatically replaces the triangular brackets with a semicolon and a space.

\textbf{Example (Descriptors in fields 300, 301, and 302)}

\texttt{POPULATION AGRICOLE; CONSCIENCE DE CLASSE; IDEOLOGIES - MILIEU SOCIAL; PARENTE; ASPECTS ECONOMIQUES; MEXIQUE}

2. In the FST for the inverted file, all of the descriptor fields — 300, 301, 302, 303, and 304 — have been assigned the field identifier 301. In addition, field 300 has been entered a second time in the FST with the field identifier 300.

To search on a descriptor regardless of which descriptor field it is in, use field identifier 301.

To search on a descriptor only if it is the main subject of the item, use field identifier 300.

\textsuperscript{23} Experience has shown that the use of upper case for entering descriptors is more efficient because 1) descriptors usually appear in the thesaurus in upper case, without accents, and 2) when changes are made to the descriptors in the thesaurus database, it is easier to update the descriptors in the bibliographic record if they have been entered in upper case and without accents.
Example

To retrieve all items indexed with the descriptor "remote sensing", use the search expression: REMOTE SENSING/(301)

To retrieve only items whose main subject is "remote sensing", use the search expression: REMOTE SENSING/(300)
SECONDARY DESCRIPTORS

CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 400

PURPOSE

Field 301 is used to enter the subject descriptors selected from the thesaurus that were not entered in field 300.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see System manager note under field 300, and Annex 3.

SELECTION

1. Select the descriptors from the thesaurus according to the guidelines in Annex 3.

2. Do not repeat descriptors that have been entered as primary descriptors in field 300.

3. Do not enter geographic descriptors (names of countries, regions, and continents) in field 301. These are entered in field 302 — Geographic descriptors.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under field 300.

Examples

<BROADCASTING><RADIO><TELEVISION><CASE STUDIES>
<MILIEU SOCIAL><PARENTE><ASPECTS ECONOMIQUES>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See System manager note under field 300.
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 302 is used to enter geographic descriptors (names of countries, continents, and regions) selected from the thesaurus.

Note   For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see System manager note under field 300, and Annex 3.

SELECTION

1. Select the geographic descriptors from the thesaurus according to the guidelines in Annex 3.

2. If geographic descriptors that do not come into the scope of the thesaurus (e.g., names of geographic areas at the subnational level) have been adopted as local descriptors, do not enter these here, but in field 303 — Local descriptors.

DATA ENTRY

Follow the rules for data entry under field 300.

Examples

<LATIN AMERICA><UNITED KINGDOM><THAILAND><INDIA>
<MEXIQUE>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See System manager note under field 300.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 303 is used to enter descriptors that the system requires and that do not fall within the scope of the thesaurus.

Note For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see System manager note under field 300, and Annex 3.

SELECTION

1. Enter the following types of descriptors in field 303:
   - geographic descriptors that do not come into the scope of the thesaurus, such as names of cities, states, subnational regions, rivers, and mountains;
   - names of institutions that are the subject of the item and that are not in the thesaurus;
   - names of persons that are the subject of the item; and
   - subject descriptors not accepted for inclusion in the thesaurus.

2. To ensure that descriptors in this field are entered consistently, keep a list of those that have been used. This will serve as an authority list.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the descriptor as found in the authority list of local descriptors. If the descriptor is not in the authority list, make an entry following guidelines established by the documentation centre.

2. Enter the descriptors in upper case between triangular brackets. Do not leave a space between the descriptors.

Examples

<CALCUTTA><BOMBAY>
<NILE>
<NYERERE, J.K.>

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See System manager note under field 300.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 100

PURPOSE

Field 304 is used to enter descriptors that are not in the thesaurus but that the documentation centre has proposed or wishes to propose for inclusion, such as names of new concepts or technologies.

Note  For guidance on retrieval on the descriptor fields, see System manager note under field 300, and Annex 3.

SELECTION

This field should be used only rarely and only after carefully considering whether a new descriptor is needed and the form it should take. Research should be carried out to determine, for example, whether the term really describes a new concept or whether it is only a new synonym; and whether the proposed descriptor is the most appropriate term to describe the new concept.

Do not use this field if a way can be found to express the concept using descriptors from the thesaurus.

DATA ENTRY

Enter the descriptors in upper case and between triangular brackets. Do not leave a space between descriptors.

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

See System manager note under field 300.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1000

PURPOSE

Field 310 is used to enter a summary of the subject of the item that supplements the information entered in the descriptor fields — 300 to 304.

DEFINITION

An abstract is a concise and accurate representation of the contents of a document, without interpretation or criticism.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Prepare an abstract under the following circumstances:

   - When the item is to be included in a published bibliography and/or an internationally available database. (Because the item is not likely to be immediately available to the user, the abstract will help the user judge whether the item is relevant to his or her needs.)
   - When it is judged that the descriptors alone do not give sufficient indication of the subject of the item.

2. Enter the abstract in the language of analysis.

3. Do not use a percent sign (%) in the abstract, but write the word in full.

Example

Descriptors:

Field 300:  <WATER SUPPLY><DESLINATION><WATER REUSE>

Field 301:  <APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY><WATER RESOURCES>
           <RENEWABLE RESOURCES><RESOURCES DEVELOPMENT>
           <CONFERENCE PAPERS>

---

24 Adapted from Development Information Abstracts, produced by the United Nations Information Systems Unit.
Field 302: <CHINA>

Abstract:

Field 310: Seminar paper forecasts that China's water consumption will greatly increase and therefore nonconventional water resources will need to be developed. Discusses work done on desalination using such technologies as electrodialysis, reverse osmosis, distillation, and solar process. Also describes reuse of municipal waste water, and rainwater harvesting in rural areas. Concludes that further study and careful planning are needed.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 100

PURPOSE

When an information system produces current awareness bulletins arranged by broad subject area, field 320 is used to enter the broad subject heading.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Each information system will draw up its own list of broad subject headings representing the broad subject areas covered by the database. About 10 headings should be sufficient.

2. Enter only one heading for each item.

Examples

Rural development
Migration
Transport
Tourism
Health
CHARACTERISTICS

Essential
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 4

PURPOSE

Field 400 is used to enter a code indicating the stage that the item has reached in the processing cycle.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Select one of the following codes indicating the stage that the item has reached in the processing cycle:
   
   ORD The item is on order.
   RECD The item has been received but has not yet been catalogued.
   LIST The item has been catalogued and will appear in the next list of new additions to the collection.
   CAT The item is catalogued and has appeared in the list of new additions (or it was not chosen to appear in the list).
   DEL The record is no longer active but the documentation centre wishes to retain it for statistical or other purposes. It is excluded from the set of records describing the collection. This may happen under the following circumstances:
   
   • another copy of the record has been created because additional copies of the item have been ordered. Once the additional copies are received, they are added to the original record. The second record is retained for statistical purposes; or
   • the item has been withdrawn from the collection or is lost.

2. Change the code as the item progresses through the processing cycle.

Examples

The item has been received but not catalogued.
Enter: RECD

The item has been catalogued and will appear in the next list of new additions.
Change the previous code to: LIST

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

To carry out global changes on this field, program CHANGE, included on the diskette, may be used to change automatically the status code in all records containing a common code (see Annex 19).
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

**Field 410** is used to indicate in which of the library collections the item is kept. It is normally used in conjunction with the call number in **field 411** to indicate the exact location of the item in the library.

It is also used to indicate the exact location of nonbook material filed by running number, such as microfiches.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter a code indicating the location of the item in the library.

2. If the item is located in a microfiche collection and filed by microfiche number, enter the location MF and the microfiche number in this field.

3. If different copies of the item are located in different collections, enter each location. Separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

**Note** If the centre is in the practice of keeping some items in both hardcopy (arranged under call number) and microfiche (filed by microfiche number), enter the microfiche number before the other locations (see example 4 below).

Examples

1. There is only one copy of the item and it is kept in the Reference collection.
   Enter: REF

2. One copy of the item is kept in the main collection and another copy is kept in the reference collection.
   Enter: MAIN%REF

3. The item is filed in the microfiche collection and numbered 0102.
   Enter: MF0102

4. One copy of the item is kept in the main collection and a microfiche version of it is number 0039 in the microfiche collection.
   Enter: MF0039%MAIN
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 40

PURPOSE

Field 411 is used to enter the call number of item. The call number is composed of a classification code indicating the subject of the item, and a shelf number, distinguishing among items with the same classification code.

Well-known classification schemes include the Dewey Decimal Classification (DDC), the Universal Decimal Classification (UDC), and the Library of Congress Classification (LC). Some documentation centres adopt the classification scheme used to group the descriptors in their thesaurus as a classification scheme for their collection.

Most schemes for shelf numbers are based on the first three letters of the name of the author.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the classification number that has been assigned to the item, followed by a space and the shelf number.

Example

341.1 UNI

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

In the display format, field 411 appears after field 410, separated by one space.

Example

REF 341.1 UNI
CHARACTERISTICS

Mandatory
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 412 is used to indicate the number of copies of the item held in the library.

It is entered at the cataloguing stage and should not be confused with field 513, which is used at the acquisitions stage to indicate the number of copies on order.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the total number of copies of the item held by the library, regardless of format.

Examples
1. The library holds one copy of the item.
   Enter: 1
2. The library holds one hardcopy and one microfiche copy of the item.
   Enter: 2
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 413 is used to indicate the accession number(s) assigned to the items described in the bibliographic record.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter each accession number as a separate occurrence.

Examples

1. The library holds one copy of a monograph. It has been stamped with accession number 153429.
   Enter: 153429

2. The library holds one copy of each volume of a three-volume collection. They have been given accession numbers 832, 833, and 834.
   Enter: 832%833%834

3. The library holds one copy of volume 1, and 2 copies of volume 2 in a two-volume collection. The items have been given accession numbers 9234, 9235, and 9236.
   Enter: 9234%9235%9236
**CHARACTERISTICS**

- Optional
- Not repeatable
- Not subfielded
- Maximum length 4

**PURPOSE**

In a system where statistics on the types of material held in the collection are required, field 420 is used to enter a code indicating the type of material.

**SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY**

1. Each documentation centre will draw up its own list of codes corresponding to the types of material it needs to identify.

   Codes could include:
   - PER Periodical article
   - MONO Monograph
   - PART Part of a monograph or collection
   - THES Thesis
   - REP Report
   - UND United Nations document

2. Select one code from the list. When the item belongs to more than one type, choose a type according to local priorities.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 430 is used to identify the documentalist(s) who created the record.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the name or initials of the documentalist(s).
2. If more than one name is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

Examples

1. One documentalist was responsible for both cataloguing and indexing the item.
   Enter: B. Baker
2. One documentalist was responsible for cataloguing the item and another was responsible for indexing it.
   Enter: AS%SF
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 4

PURPOSE

Field 500 is used to indicate whether the item was acquired through purchase, as part of a subscription, free, or on exchange.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Each documentation centre will draw up its own set of codes to indicate acquisition type.

   These could include:
   
   PUR Purchased
   SUB Acquired as part of a subscription
   FREE Acquired free
   EXCH Acquired under an exchange agreement

2. Enter the code that corresponds to the manner of acquiring the item.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 510 is used to enter the date on which the item was ordered or requested.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the date on which the item was ordered or requested in the form:
YYYY-MM-DD
where YYYY = year, MM = month, and DD = day

Examples

1. The record is created and a computer-produced purchase order generated on 24th June 1993.
   Enter: 1993-06-24

2. A form letter requesting the item free of charge is sent out on 3rd May 1993.
   Enter: 1993-05-03

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

If your system produces computer-generated order forms, the system will enter the date into this field when the order is created.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional  (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

When an item that is on order has not been received within a certain period, field 511 is used to enter the date on which a reminder was sent to the supplier.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the date on which the reminder was sent in the form:

YYYY-MM-DD

where YYYY = year, MM = month, and DD = day

Example

A reminder is sent to the supplier on 14th November 1993.

Enter: 1993-11-14

SYSTEM MANAGER NOTE

If your system produces computer-generated claims for overdue orders, the system will enter the date into this field when the report is created.
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 10

PURPOSE

Field 512 is used to enter the date on which the item was received.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the date on which the item was received in the form:
YYYY-MM-DD
where YYYY = year, MM = month, and DD = day

Example

The item was received on 1st December 1993.
Enter: 1993-12-01
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 2

PURPOSE

Field 513 is used to enter the number of copies of the item that have been ordered.

It should not be confused with field 412, which is entered at the cataloguing stage to indicate the number of copies of the item held in the library.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Enter the number of copies ordered.

Example

Two copies have been ordered.

Enter: 2
**CHARACTERISTICS**

- Optional
- Repeatable
- Not subfielded
- Maximum length 25

**PURPOSE**

Field 514 is used to enter the name of the person(s) who asked the library to order the item, so that, when the item is received, the requester may be informed.

**SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY**

1. Enter the name of the person who requested the item.

2. If more than one name is to be entered, separate the occurrences with a percentage sign.

**Example**

The item was requested by Mr M. Rahman.

Enter: M. Rahman
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)
Not repeatable

Option 1
Not subfielded

Option 2
Subfielded
^a Supplier name
^b Address – line 1
^c Address – line 2
^d Address – line 3
^e Country

Option 3
Subfielded
^z Supplier code
Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 515 is used to enter the name and, if desired, the address of the body from whom the item has been requested. The supplier may be an agent, the publisher, or the issuing organization.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

Option 1: manual ordering system

1. Enter the name of the agency to whom the purchase order or request letter is to be sent.
2. If the item was unsolicited, enter the name of the agency that donated the item.
3. If necessary to identify the body, add the name of the city.

Examples

Starkmann
FAO
Institute of Development Studies, Brighton

Option 2: computer-printed orders with manual supplier authority file

If purchase orders are computer-printed, enter the name of the supplier in subfield a, the address as it should appear on a letter in subfields b to d, and the country in subfield e.
Option 3: computerized supplier authority records

If the purchase orders are computer-printed, and if the volume of ordering warrants it, computerized supplier authority records may be used, as described in Annex 6.

Enter a short alphabetic code representing the name of the supplier in subfield z of field 515 instead of the full name and address of the supplier. Whenever the record is used to print a purchase order, the full name and address from the authority record is printed, instead of the code.

Example

\^zITEC

System manager note

1. When using a computerized supplier authority file, make sure that the supplier authority file record exists for the supplier. If it does not already exist, create it first. Then proceed to create the bibliographic record. Failure to first enter the authority records will result in the supplier not being properly inverted in the bibliographic record. Refer to Annex 19 — Section IX, Inversion for more information.

2. On computer-printed purchase orders, each subfield will be printed on a new line.

Example

Intermediate Technology Publications Ltd.
9 King Street
London WC2E 8HN
England
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional (Mandatory for acquisitions)

Not repeatable

Subfielded
^a Price
^b Currency

Maximum length 20

PURPOSE

Field 516 is used, when the item is purchased, to enter the price of the item.

SELECTION

1. At the time of ordering, enter the estimated price, if it can be determined.

2. When the item is received, replace the estimated price with the actual price.

3. If more than one copy of the item has been ordered, enter the total price.

DATA ENTRY

1. Enter the price in subfield a. Use a decimal point to separate pounds from pence, dollars from cents, francs from centimes, etc. Do not use any punctuation to separate thousands from hundreds.

2. Indicate the currency in subfield b. This may either be entered in free form, or using the appropriate ISO currency code.25

Examples
^a22.50^bUSD
^a50000^bLIT
^a40^bFS

CHARACTERISTICS

Optional
Not repeatable
Not subfielded
Maximum length 200

PURPOSE

Field 517 is used to enter notes relating to the order for the item.

SELECTION AND DATA ENTRY

1. Enter such information as:
   - the source of information concerning the item (so that it can be referred to again if necessary), and
   - the status of the order (as reported by the supplier), and a record of action taken. Include the date of the report or action, in the form YYYY-MM-DD.

2. Use standard book trade abbreviations such as:
   - BO Back ordered
   - NOP Not our publication
   - NYP Not yet published
   - OP Out of print
   - OS Out of stock

3. Enter a period and a space after each note except the last.

Examples

ACCIS newsletter, v. 6. no. 3, Sept 1988 Prepayment
Reported NYP 1994-01-14. Due to be published June 1994
Reported OP 1993-12-01
CHARACTERISTICS

Optional  (Essential if the database also contains computerized authority records)

Not repeatable

Not subfielded

Maximum length 1

PURPOSE

Field 999 is used to indicate whether the record being entered is a bibliographic record or one of the several kinds of authority records described in Annexes 2, 4, and 6.

SELECTION

Select one of the following record types:

B  Bibliographic record (fields 001 to 517)
C  Corporate name authority record (fields 901 to 905 and 997 to 998, described in Annex 2)
S  Serials authority record (fields 911 to 916 and 997 to 998, described in Annex 4)
X  Supplier authority record (fields 921 to 922 and 997 to 998, described in Annex 6)

DATA ENTRY

The correct code should already be present as a default value for this field in each of the data entry worksheets used for entering the records on-line.

Do not delete or change the code already present as a default value for this field.
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

The guidelines in this annex are to be used for entering fields:

110 Personal author(s)
210 Personal author(s) - parent

I PERSONAL NAME AUTHORITY FILE

A documentation centre that frequently encounters complex personal author names should keep a personal name authority file to ensure that authors’ names are cited in a consistent manner. The file will probably be maintained in the form of a card index.

The card index will have entries for the correct form of name and “see” references from other possible forms of the name. The card for the correct form of the name will also show the forms of the name from which “see” references have been made, preceded by “X”.

Example

For the name Abdullah bin Nuh, three cards will be required — one card filed under the authoritative form of the name, and two cards for “see” references from each of the other two possible forms. The card filed under the correct form of the name will show the forms of the name from which references have been made, preceded by “X”.

Card 1
Abdullah bin Nuh
X     bin Nuh, Abdullah
     Nuh, Abdullah bin

Card 2
bin Nuh, Abdullah
     See: Abdullah bin Nuh

Card 3
Nuh, Abdullah bin
     See: Abdullah bin Nuh

II RULES FOR FORM OF PERSONAL AUTHOR NAME

As the basis for the rules for form of personal name, the following sources have been used:


1 General Rules

1.1 Enter the element that is considered to be the surname or family name first, followed by a comma and a space and the remaining elements of the name. The part of the name that is entered first is called the "entry element".

Option

Individual documentation centres may decide to enter only the initials of forenames after the surname.

Examples

Kelly, Edward J.
Mkamwa, John
Ong, Shao Er
Penning de Vries, F.

1.2 Do not add indications of rank, such as General, Professor, or Doctor.

2 Determining Entry Element

2.1 Treat as the entry element, the part of the name that the author treats as his or her family name or surname. This can often be determined:

- by looking for references to the author in the item itself (for example, in the bibliography and in the preface or other introductory matter). Note that sometimes the author’s surname is in upper case on the title page.
- by consulting the national bibliography of the author’s country.

2.2 When it is not evident which part of the name should be used as the entry element, follow the rules below.

3 European Names Except Portuguese and Spanish

Note For Portuguese and Spanish names, see paragraphs 4 and 5 below.
3.1 Entry Element

The entry element is the surname or family name, which is the last element in the name.

Examples
Blair, Angus
Lacroix, Yolande
Calvino, Italo
Fuchs, Ingrid

3.2 Compound names

The entry element may be a compound surname. The parts of compound names are often, but not always, joined by a hyphen. Enter compound names under the first element of the compound.

Examples
Mignot-Lefebvre, Marguerite
Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
Bonham Carter, Mark

3.3 Compound surnames containing prefixes

In AACR2 and in national cataloguing rules of European countries, prefixes are treated differently according to the nationality of the author. For example, an English-speaking author named Charles De La Salle is entered as: De La Salle, Charles; whereas a French-speaking author with the same name is entered as: La Salle, Charles de.

Because it is not always easy to determine the nationality of the author, and therefore to determine how a name containing a prefix should be treated, two options for the treatment of such names have been provided.

Option 1

Use the following simplified rules for treatment of names containing prefixes.

a) Enter surnames beginning with the following prefixes under the prefix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>First Letter</th>
<th>Second Letter</th>
<th>Third Letter</th>
<th>Fourth Letter</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>am</td>
<td>des</td>
<td>las</td>
<td>ver</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>de</td>
<td>di</td>
<td>le</td>
<td>vom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>del</td>
<td>du</td>
<td>les</td>
<td>zum</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>della</td>
<td>l’</td>
<td>li</td>
<td>zur</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>delle</td>
<td>la</td>
<td>los</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Examples
Am Rhyn, August
Di Giacomo, Salvatore
De la Fontaine, Jean
Ver Boven, Aja
b) Enter surnames beginning with the following prefixes under the part of the surname following the prefix.

af    ten    van den    von der
den    ter    van der
op de    van    von

Examples

Beek, Leo op de
Brink, Jan ten
Hagen, Friedrich von der
Hallstrom, Gunnar af

Option 2

Follow the rules in chapter 22 of AACR2 and in Names of persons for the treatment of prefixes. These are:

a) English-speaking countries

Enter surnames beginning with a preposition under the preposition.

Examples

De la Mare, Walter
Van Doren, Mark

b) France

Enter surnames beginning with “de” under the part of the name following the preposition. Enter surnames beginning with other prefixes under the prefix.

Examples

Beauvoir, Simone de
Des Granges, Charles-Marc
Le Cordier, Roland
La Fontaine, Jean de

c) Germany and Austria

Follow the same rules as for Option 1.

Examples

Hagen, Friedrich von der
Schack, Adolf von
Vom Ende, Erich
d) Italy

Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix.

Examples
De Amicis, Edmondo
Di Camerino, Roberta

e) Netherlands

Follow the same rules as for Option 1.

Examples
Ver Huell, Carel
Brink, Jan ten

f) Denmark, Norway, and Sweden

Enter surnames beginning with a prefix of Germanic origin, such as “von”, “der”, “af”, under the part of the name following the prefix. Enter surnames beginning with other kinds of prefix under the prefix.

Examples
Geijerstam, Gustav af
Recke, Ernest von der
De la Gardie, Magnus Gabriel

4 Portuguese Names

4.1 Enter Portuguese names under the last element of the family name.

Examples
Castro, Antonio Pires de
Silva, Ovidio Saraiva de Carvalho e

4.2 When the last element of the family name is a qualifier indicating a family relationship, such as Filho, Júnior, Neto, or Sobrinho, enter under the second last element of the name.

Examples
Vidal Neto, Victor
Castro Sobrinho, António Ribeiro de

4.3 In former Portuguese colonies, however, the qualifier (Filho, Júnior, Neto, and Sobrinho) sometimes constitutes the family name.
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Examples
Neto, António Luis
Sobrinho, Jorge

4.4 Enter a simple surname beginning with a prefix under the part following the prefix.

Example
Fonseca, Martinho Augusto da

5 Spanish Names

5.1 Compound Spanish surnames usually consist of the father’s name followed by the mother’s name. A married woman may add, after these elements, the preposition “de” and her husband’s name.

Examples
Francisco Rodríguez Marin
Marcelino Menéndez y Pelayo
Elena Torres García de Urbina

5.2 Enter compound Spanish names under the first element of the surname. This is usually the second last element of the name, but may be, in the case of married women using all three name elements, the third last element.

Examples
Rodríguez Marin, Francisco
Menéndez y Pelayo, Marcelino
Torres García de Urbina, Elena

5.3 Sometimes Spanish authors give only the initial of the last element of the name. If it is not possible to determine the full form of the name, enter it in the form found on the document.

Example
Isaza V., Guillermo

5.4 Enter a surname beginning with a prefix consisting only of an article, such as “Las”, under the prefix.

Example
Las Heras, Manuel

5.5 Enter surnames beginning with a prefix consisting of a preposition, or a preposition and an article, under the part of the name following the prefix.
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Examples
Vega, Francisco de la Pereda, José María de

6 African Names

6.1 Botswana

Enter under the last part of the name.

Example
Name: Tebogo Kagiso Pule
Enter: Pule, Tebogo Kagiso

6.2 Burkina Faso

Enter under the last part of the name. Do not separate hyphenated compound names.

Examples
Name: Joseph Ki-Zerbo
Enter: Ki-Zerbo, Joseph

Name: Cheik Ousman Diallo
Enter: Diallo, Cheik Ousman

6.3 Burundi

Enter under the last part of the name. Do not separate hyphenated compound surnames.

Examples
Name: Emile Hatungimana
Enter: Hatungimana, Emile

Name: Cyriaque Vyanka-Ndondera
Enter: Vyanka-Ndondera, Cyriaque

6.4 Cameroon

Enter under patronymic, i.e., the part of the name that follows a forename of European or Islamic origin.

Examples
Name: Ousmane Mey
Enter: Mey, Ousmane
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Name: Mathias Makang Ma Mbock
Enter: Makang Ma Mbock, Mathias

6.5 Chad
Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples
Name: Sou Ngonn Sou
Enter: Sou Ngonn Sou

Name: Bongbanda Hogra
Enter: Bongbanda Hogra

6.6 Côte d’Ivoire
Enter under patronymic, which is usually the first element of the name. Insert a comma after the patronymic.

Examples
Name: Assouan Akassiba
Enter: Assouan, Akassiba

Name: Amoikon Aka N’dà
Enter: Amoikon, Aka N’dà

6.7 Ethiopia
Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples
Name: Ermias Kebréab
Enter: Ermias Kebréab

Name: Eshetu Habte Georgis
Enter: Eshetu Habte Georgis

6.8 The Gambia
Enter under patronymic. This is usually the last element.

Example
Name: Seydou N’jie Badjan
Enter: Badjan, Seydou N’jie
6.9 Ghana

Enter under surname, which is the last element in the name. Enter compound surnames under the first part of the compound. Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix.

Examples

Name: Kweku Dua-Agyemang
Enter: Dua-Agyemang, Kweku

Name: Daniel Kojo Da Rocha
Enter: Da Rocha, Daniel Kojo

6.10 Kenya

a) Afro-Asiatic group of languages (Somali, Borana, etc.)

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Yusuf Hassan
Enter: Yusuf Hassan

Name: Amina Inan Ali
Enter: Amina Inan Ali

b) Bantu group of languages

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Munyao wa Musau
Enter: Musau, Munyao wa

Name: James Musau Munyao Mula
Enter: Mula, James Musau Munyao

c) Kalenjin; Luo

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: John Ongayo Kokwaro
Enter: Kokwaro, John Ongayo

Name: Arphaxao Kipruto arap Maiyo
Enter: Maiyo, Arphaxao Kipruto arap
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

d) Pokot

Enter under the parts of the name following a forename of foreign origin, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Ruth Chenanga Chepo Kapelion
Enter: Chenanga Chepo Kapelion, Ruth

Name: Peter Pseret Endoo
Enter: Pseret Endoo, Peter

e) Banjuni group of languages (Kiamu and Swahili)

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Example

Name: Athman bin Lali Omar
Enter: Athman bin Lali Omar

6.11 Mauritania

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Moktar Ould Haiba
Enter: Moktar Ould Haiba

Name: Ahmed Ould Djeddou
Enter: Ahmed Ould Djeddou

6.12 Nigeria

Enter under family name, which is the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Chinua Achebe
Enter: Achebe, Chinua

Name: Abubakar Babba-Innar
Enter: Babba-Innar, Abubakar

6.13 Senegal

Enter under patronymic, which is usually the last element of the name, and include terms of respect, such as “Adjaratou” and “El Hadj”, as in the examples.
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Examples

Name: Amadou Ndiaye Samb
Enter: Samb, Amadou Ndiaye

Name: El Hadj Assane Diop
Enter: Diop, El Hadj Assane

Name: Adjaratou Magatte Sall Ndiaye
Enter: Ndiaye, Adjaratou Magatte Sall

6.14 Tanzania

a) Names in Western form

Enter under surname. Enter a surname beginning with a prefix under the prefix. Enter a compound surname under the last element of the name.

Example (surname beginning with a prefix)

Name: R.K. Che Kondo
Enter: Che Kondo, R.K.

Examples (compound name)

Name: Julius Kambarage Nyerere
Enter: Nyerere, Julius Kambarage

Name: B.B. Ngene wa Mapua
Enter: Mapua, B.B. Ngene wa

b) Islamic and tribal forms

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Hasani bini Ismail
Enter: Hasani bini Ismail

Name: Kiziku wa Maziku
Enter: Kiziku wa Maziku

6.15 Uganda

Enter under family name, which is the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Tucker Lwanga
Enter: Lwanga, Tucker
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Name: Okot p’Bitek
Enter: p’Bitek, Okot

Name: John Kibuka-Musoke
Enter: Kibuka-Musoke, John

6.16 Zaire

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Ilanga Nyonschi
Enter: Ilanga Nyonschi

Name: Lumpungu Kamanda
Enter: Lumpungu Kamanda

6.17 Zambia

Enter under the last element of the name.

Example

Name: Samual Samusungwa
Enter: Samusungwa, Samual

7 Arabic Names

7.1 When an Arabic name has only two elements, the second element is the family name.

Examples

Name: Fatimah Barakat
Enter: Barakat, Fatimah

Name: Jamil Mattar
Enter: Mattar, Jamil

7.2 Compound names containing prefixes

Enter compound family names containing the prefixes Al, El, Abou, Abun, Abdul, Abdel, Ben, or Ibn under the prefix.

Examples

Name: Abbas Mahmud Al’Akkad
Enter: Al’Akkad, Abbas Mahmud

Name: Tahir Abdul Hakim
Enter: Abdul Hakim, Tahir
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Name: Abdul Rahman Ibn Khaldoun
Enter: Ibn Khaldoun, Abdul Rahman

7.3 Compound names containing suffixes

The phrase “El-Dine” and its variants (al-din, al-Din, etc.) is a suffix and is, therefore, always the second part of a family name or of a given name.

Examples

Name: Kheir El-Dine Raouf
Enter: Raouf, Kheir El-Dine

Name: Muhammad Sadr al-Din
Enter: Sadr al-Din, Muhammad

8 Asian names

8.1 Bangladesh

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Anwar Pasha
Enter: Pasha, Anwar

Name: Rabindra Bijay Barua
Enter: Barua, Rabindra Bijay

8.2 Burma

See Myanmar

8.3 Chinese names

Enter under the family name, which is the first element of the name. Insert a comma after the family name.

Examples

Name: Lee Hon-ling
Enter: Lee, Hon-ling

Name: Li Xuezeng
Enter: Li, Xuezeng

Name: Lim Hong Too
Enter: Lim, Hong Too

Note  Chinese living abroad or writing for a Western audience frequently reverse the traditional order of their name.
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

Example

Name: Ching-chih Chen
Enter: Chen, Ching-chih

When a Western forename is added, enter it before the Chinese forenames.

Example

Name: Philip Loh Fook Seng
Enter: Loh, Philip Fook Seng

8.4 India

a) Punjabi names (i.e., names containing “Singh”)

Enter under the first element, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Surjit Singh Sethi
Enter: Surjit Singh Sethi

Name: Trilok Singh
Enter: Trilok Singh

b) Other names

When parts of the name have been reduced to initials, enter under the part of the name written in full. If it is not clear which part of the name should be the entry element, enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: V.K.P. Rao
Enter: Rao, V.K.P.

Name: C.P. Ramaswamy Ayyar
Enter: Ramaswamy Ayyar, C.P.

Name: Subhash Chandra Bose
Enter: Bose, Subhash Chandra

8.5 Indonesia

Enter names containing terms of relationship, such as bin, binte, binti, or ibni, under the first element, in direct order.

Example

Name: Abdullah bin Nuh
Enter: Abdullah bin Nuh
Enter other names under the last element of the name.

**Examples**

- Name: Amir Taat Nasution  
  Enter: Nasution, Amir Taat
- Name: Nani Suwondo-Surasno  
  Enter: Suwondo-Surasno, Nani

**8.6 Japan**

Enter under family name, which is the last element of the name.

**Examples**

- Name: Itsue Takamure  
  Enter: Takamure, Itsue
- Name: Hiroko Ozaki  
  Enter: Ozaki, Hiroko

**8.7 Korea**

Treat Korean names in the same way as Chinese names.

**Examples**

- Name: Kim Ku  
  Enter: Kim, Ku
- Name: Koh Hoe-Young  
  Enter: Koh, Hoe-Young

**8.8 Malay names**

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order. However, if it is known that the person treats another element of the name as the surname, treat that part as the entry element.

**Examples**

- Name: Abdullah Sanusi bin Ahmad  
  Enter: Abdullah Sanusi bin Ahmad
- Name: Fatimah Husain  
  Enter: Fatimah Husain
- Name: A. Samad Said  
  Enter: A. Samad Said
- Name: Faridah Merican (uses the second element as surname)  
  Enter: Merican, Faridah
8.9 Myanmar

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order, unless the first element is a Western forename. Terms of address, such as U, Daw, Ko, Ma, Maung, Bo, and Saya, are entered after the name, preceded by a comma.

Examples

Name: U Thant
Enter: Thant, U

Name: Freddie Ba Hli
Enter: Ba Hli, Freddie

Name: Maung Hla Htun
Enter: Hla Htun, Maung

8.10 Pakistan

Enter under the last element of the name.

Examples

Name: Anwarul Haque Chaudhri
Enter: Chaudhri, Anwarul Haque

Name: Muhammed Husayn
Enter: Husayn, Muhammed

However, names consisting of two personal names, of which the first is not Muhammad, or a variant form of Muhammad, are entered under the first name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Hazrat Ali
Enter: Hazrat Ali

Name: Noor Mohammad
Enter: Noor Mohammad

8.11 Philippines

Enter compound surnames under the first element of the compound. Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix.

Examples

Name: Pedro Pe Benito
Enter: Pe Benito, Pedro

Name: Horacio de la Costa
Enter: de la Costa, Horacio
ANNEX 1: GUIDELINES FOR PERSONAL AUTHOR NAMES

8.12 Sri Lanka

Enter under the last element of the name. Enter surnames beginning with a prefix under the prefix. When the last element of the name is preceded by a name of Western origin, thus making a compound surname, enter under the first element of the compound.

Examples

Name: Ratne Welikala
Enter: Welikala, Ratne

Name: Lal Premnath De Mel
Enter: De Mel, Lal Premnath

Name: D.F. De Silva Guneratne
Enter: De Silva Guneratne, D.F.

8.13 Thailand

Enter under the first element of the name, in direct order.

Examples

Name: Nilawan Pinthong
Enter: Nilawan Pinthong

Name: Maria Laosunthara
Enter: Maria Laosunthara

8.14 Vietnam

Enter under the last element of the name, which is the personal name.

Note  The first element of the name is the family name, but this is not used as the entry element.

Example

Name: Nguyen Dinh Thi
Enter: Thi, Nguyen Dinh
A corporate body is an organization or group of persons that is identified by a particular name and that acts collectively. Corporate bodies include institutions, governments, international organizations, religious bodies, associations, and business firms.

Examples

National Research Council
Asian and Pacific Skill Development Programme
Unesco
Brasil. Secretaria Especial do Meio Ambiente
Universidad Católica Boliviana
Bibliothèque Nationale Suisse

To promote consistency in the way corporate bodies are entered in the bibliographic records, you are strongly advised to maintain an authority file for the names of corporate bodies.

The rules in this annex are for the establishment of entries in the Corporate Name Authority File, which will be consulted for the correct form of entry (i.e., the form of the name established for use in a particular system) for the following fields:

111 — Corporate author(s)
112 — Affiliation
113 — Other associated institution(s)
211 — Corporate author(s) - parent

1 Form of the Corporate Name Authority File

The Corporate Name Authority File (CNAF) may take the form either of a card index or of a computerized file. The decision as to form will depend on the size of the bibliographic database, and the amount of computer storage space available.

For the sake of simplicity, the examples of entries and cross references given in the “Rules for names of corporate bodies” section of this annex take the form of entries in a card index.

1 Corporate Name Authority File in the Form of a Card Index

The Corporate Name Authority File in the form of a card index will contain entries for the correct form of the name of each body, interfiled with cross references from variant forms of the name.

The card for the correct form of the name will show the forms of the name from which references have been made, preceded by “X”. This allows all of the cards to be traced if an entry needs to be changed. It will also show the date on which the entry was established.
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

Example

Card 1

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA

Other lang: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo

X IDRC 1988-01-14

Card 2

IDRC

See: International Development Research Centre

Card 3

Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International, Ottawa, ON CA

Other lang: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo

International Development Research Centre

X CRDI 1988-01-14

Card 4

CRDI

See: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International

Card 5

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo, Ottawa, ON CA

Other lang: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International

International Development Research Centre

X CIID 1988-01-14

Card 6

CIID

See: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo

2 Computerized Corporate Name Authority Records

In MICRO-ISIS, corporate name authority records may be created in the bibliographic database, allowing a code representing the corporate body name (in fact, the MFN of the authority record) to be entered in subfield z of the appropriate field in the bibliographic record, instead of the name in full. When the bibliographic record is displayed or printed, the full name of the corporate body appears in place of the code. The advantages of computerized authority records are described in the Introduction, Section 8 — Computerized authority records.
Here is a list of fields required in the corporate name authority record.

**Corporate Name Authority Records**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Subfields</th>
<th>Repeatable</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Inversion</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>901</td>
<td>Corporate body</td>
<td>^a Main body</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^b Sub-body</td>
<td></td>
<td>^b 4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^c Place</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^d Country code</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>902</td>
<td>See reference(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>903</td>
<td>Other language version(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>904</td>
<td>Former name(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>905</td>
<td>Later name(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>500</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>997</td>
<td>Authority record notes</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>998</td>
<td>Authority record date</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>999</td>
<td>Record type</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The significant words in fields 901 and 902 may be inverted for retrieval (using MICRO-ISIS indexing technique 4). Both fields will be inverted with the field identifier 901.

Fields 902 to 905 will contain the cross references.

Field 997 will contain information such as the source in which the correct form of the name was verified and other information about changes of name.

Field 998 will contain the date the record was created or the date on which it was last changed. The date is entered in the form YYYY-MM-DD, i.e., year–month–day, as in the examples below.

For corporate authority records, field 999 will always contain the code C.

**Examples**

**MFN 2**

| 901 | ^aInternational Development Research Centre^cOttawa, ON^dCA |
| 902 | IDRC |
| 903 | Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International%Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo |
| 997 | Source: its annual report |
| 998 | 1988-01-14 |
| 999 | C |

**MFN 5**

| 901 | ^aCentre de Recherches pour le Développement International^cOttawa, ON^dCA |
| 902 | CRDI |
| 903 | International Development Research Centre%Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo |
| 997 | Source: its annual report |
| 998 | 1988-01-14 |
| 999 | C |
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

MFN 6
901 "aCentro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo" cOttawa, ON dCA
902 CIID
903 International Development Research Centre%Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International
997 Source: its annual report
998 1988-01-14
999 C

MFN 11
901 "aECAFE" cBangkok dTH
902 Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East%UN. Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
905 ESCAP
997 Name changed in 1974
998 1987-10-01
999 C

MFN 3
901 "aESCAP" cBangkok dTH
902 Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific%UN. Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
904 ECAFE
997 Name changed in 1974. Source: Ybk of Int Orgs
998 1987-10-01
999 C

MFN 4
901 "aNigeria. Federal Office of Statistics" bSurvey Organization and Methods Division dNG
998 1988-04-12
999 C

A printed version of the authority file may be produced by interfiling fields 901 and 902, as in the following example where the parenthetical numbers are MFNs:

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International, Ottawa, ON Ca (5)
OTHER LANG: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo
International Development Research Centre

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo, Ottawa, ON Ca (6)
OTHER LANG: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International
International Development Research Centre

---

26 To produce this kind of corporate authority index in MICRO-ISIS, use the special program CORP on the accompanying diskette (output is Annex 19, example 14).
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

CIID
SEE: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo (6)

CRDI
SEE: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International (5)

ECAFE, Bangkok TH (11)
SEE ALSO LATER NAME: ESCAP

Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
SEE: ESCAP (3)

Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
SEE: ECAFE (11)

ESCAP, Bangkok TH (3)
SEE ALSO EARLIER NAME: ECAFE

IDRC
SEE: International Development Research Centre (2)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (2)
OTHER LANG: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo
Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo


UN. Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
SEE: ESCAP (3)

UN. Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
SEE: ECAFE (11)

II RULES FOR NAMES OF CORPORATE BODIES

Note The corporate name authority entry comprises the name of the corporate body, its location (town or city), and the ISO two-letter country code corresponding to the country in which it is located.

The rules for names of corporate bodies are based on the Rules for Form of Institution Name in Guidelines for the building of authority files in development-information systems,27 which were in turn based on chapter 24 of AACR2.28


There are two slight differences between the rules in this annex and those in chapter 24 of AACR2:

1) Although AACR2 treats projects and conferences as types of corporate body, they are not included in these rules because in this manual they are entered in separate fields.

2) The kind of subordinate body that does not normally have a distinctive name, such as a library serving an organization, or a department or school of a university, is entered as a subheading under the name of the parent body, even if it has a distinctive name. An exception is made, however, if the subordinate body is better known under its own name (see Section 7 — Subordinate bodies, below).

1 General Rule

Enter a corporate body under its own name, unless the rules in Sections 7 and 9 provide for entering it as a subheading under the name of the parent body.

Consult reference sources to verify the official form of the name. Useful reference sources include:

- Europa Yearbook
- United Nations Handbook
- World of Learning
- Yearbook of International Organizations
- national bibliographies
- official publications of the body itself

2 Language of the Name of the Body

Note For choice of language for names of governments, see Section 9 — Government bodies, below.

2.1 Enter the name of the body in its official language.

Example

An item written in English by the Royal Tropical Institute in Amsterdam bears the name of the body in both English and Dutch. The official language of the institute is Dutch.

Enter the name of the body in its official language:

Koninklijk Instituut voor de Tropen

2.2 If it is not possible to verify the official language version of the name, use the version found on the item in hand.

29 For full bibliographic details, see the Annex 16, Bibliography.
Example

The item is in English, and the corporate author, the Finnish Foundation of Alcohol Studies, is cited only in English. The name of the body in its official language is not found in available references.

The body is therefore entered as:

Finnish Foundation of Alcohol Studies

2.3 If the only official version of the name is in a non-Roman alphabet, you may choose either to transliterate the name using available international standards, or use a translation of the name found on the item or in reference sources.30

Examples

Either: Nihon Seisansei Hombu
Or: Japan Productivity Centre

Either: Rossiiskaia Akademiia Nauk
Or: Russian Academy of Sciences

2.4 If the body has an official name in more than one language, choose one of the Options below.

Option 1: unilingual information systems

a) If the body has an official name in more than one language, select the official language version of the name that corresponds to the language of the system.

Example

The language of the system is English. The body has three official language versions of its name — English, French, and Spanish.

Use the English version of the name for all items by the body, regardless of the language in which the items are written:

International Hotel Association

b) If none of the official language versions of the name corresponds to the language of the system, select the official language version that is best understood by the users of the system.

Example

The language of the system is English. The body has two official language forms of its name — Arabic and French.

Use the French form of the name.

---

30 International standards for the transliteration of Arabic, Chinese, Cyrillic, Greek, Hebrew, and Japanese are listed in the bibliography under the International Organization for Standardization.
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

c) Make a “See” reference in the authority file from each of the language versions not used.

Examples

Asociación Internacional de Hostelería
   See: International Hotel Association

Association Internationale de l’Hôtellerie
   See: International Hotel Association

Option 2: multilingual information systems

a) If the body has an official name in more than one language, establish an entry in the Corporate Name Authority File for each of the official language versions that correspond to the languages of the system.

Example

The languages of the system are English and French. The body has an official name in English, French, and Spanish.

Make an entry in the authority file for both the English and the French versions of the name.

b) Make a “See also” reference from each official language version selected to the other selected language versions; and make a “See” reference from any language versions not selected to the selected language versions.

Examples

Card 1

Asociación Internacional de Hostelería
   See: Association Internationale de l’Hôtellerie
   International Hotel Association

Card 2

Association Internationale de l’Hôtellerie
   Other lang: International Hotel Association
   X Asociación Internacional de Hostelería

Card 3

International Hotel Association
   Other lang: Association Internationale de l’Hôtellerie
   X Asociación Internacional de Hostelería
3 Changes of Name

If a body changes its name, retain the entry in the authority file under its former name and make a new entry in the authority file for the new name of the body. Make “See also” references between the two names.

Example

ECAFE

See also later name: ESCAP

ESCAP

See also former name: ECAFE

4 Acronyms

4.1 When the only official name of an organization is an acronym, use the acronym.

Example

OXFAM

4.2 When the body is an international organization that is known internationally by its official acronym, use the acronym rather than the full name of the body. It is recommended that you use the acronyms listed in Annex 12.

Examples

ECA
IFLA
UNICEF

4.3 Do not enter periods or spaces within an acronym.

Example

OECD
(not O.E.C.D or O. E. C. D.)

4.4 In the authority file, make a “See” reference from the full form of the name to the acronym.

Example

Association of South East Asian Nations

See: ASEAN
5 Additions to Names

If necessary to show the nature of the body, add terms such as “Firm” in parentheses after the name of the body. Enter the term in the language of the corporate body name. If this is not possible, enter it in one of the languages of the system.

Examples

J. Whitaker (Firm)
Jacques Esterel (Firme)
Socometal (Firma)

6 Omissions from Names

Omit terms such as Inc., S.A., and Ltd. from the name unless they are needed to show that the name refers to a corporate body.

Examples

Compañía Internacional Editora (omit S.A.)
but: Mineral Systems, Inc.

7 Subordinate Bodies

A subordinate body is a body that is part of a larger corporate body.

Note  Section 7 provides general rules for the treatment of subordinate bodies. See also Section 9 for the treatment of subordinate government bodies.

7.1 Enter a subordinate body as a subheading under the parent body if it is one of the following:

a) A department, division, branch, section, office, or unit of the parent body.

Examples

UN. Population Division
ONU. Bureau de Statistique
Special Libraries Association. Education Division
WHO. Regional Office for Africa

b) A faculty, school, institute, department, or research centre of a university.

Examples

Université Catholique de Louvain. Département de Démographie
Australian National University. Research School of Social Sciences
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

However, if an institute, research centre, or school has a distinctive name and is better known under its own name than under the name of the university, enter it directly under its own name.

Example

London School of Economics is better known under its own name than under the name of the body of which it is part (University of London).

c) A library or laboratory serving the needs of the institution to which it is attached.

Example

UN. Dag Hammarskjöld Library

d) A committee or commission established by the parent body. (For joint committees, i.e., those with two or more parent bodies, see Section 8.)

Example

UN. Committee on the Peaceful Uses of Outer Space

7.2 When there are several hierarchical elements in the name of the body, omit intervening levels that are not necessary to identify the body.

Example

Hierarchy: United Nations
  Economic and Social Council
  Statistical Commission

Enter: UN. Statistical Commission

7.3 If the name of the body contains two or more hierarchical levels, the parent body is entered in subfield a of the appropriate field in the bibliographic record. The other elements are entered in subfield b, separated by a period and a space. When the field is printed or displayed, a period and a space are inserted between subfield a and subfield b.

In the computerized Corporate Name Authority Records described at the beginning of this annex, the parent body is entered in subfield a of field 901 and the subordinate bodies are entered in subfield b.

Note The name of a government is not considered to be a hierarchical level on its own. (See the third example below.)

Examples

^aAmerican Library Association^bResources and Technical Services Division. Board of Directors

^aUN^bStatistical Commission

^aUnited States. Department of Energy^bWind Energy Technology Division
8 Joint Bodies

8.1 Enter a body made up of representatives of two or more other bodies under its own name. Make appropriate “See” references, as in the example below.

Example

Card 1

Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
X ECA. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
X FAO. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division

Card 2

ECA. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
See: Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division

Card 3

FAO. Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division
See: Joint ECA/FAO Agriculture Division

8.2 However, if a joint body is made up of parts of the same parent body, enter it as a subheading under the name of the parent body.

Example

The Joint Committee to Compile a List of International Subscription Agents is made up of representatives of three branches of the American Library Association. Enter the joint committee as:

American Library Association. Joint Committee to Compile a List of International Subscription Agents

9 Government Bodies

A government body is a body created or controlled by a government.

9.1 Enter a government body directly under its own name unless the name of the body indicates that it has an administrative, legislative, or judicial function (i.e., government ministries, etc.).

(See Sections 9.2 to 9.6 below for the treatment of government bodies that have administrative, legislative or judicial functions.)

Examples of government bodies entered directly under their own name

Oak Ridge National Laboratory
Overseas Development Institute
National Centre for Health Statistics
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

British Library
Institut National de la Statistique et des Etudes Economiques

9.2 Enter a government body whose name indicates that it has administrative, legislative, or judicial functions as a subheading under the name of the government.

Enter the body directly under the name of the government, unless the name of an intermediate body is required to properly identify the body.

Examples
Pakistan. Ministry of Information and Broadcasting
Colombia. Departamento Nacional de Planeacion
United States. Energy Information Administration
Tanzania. Bureau of Statistics
Sénégal. Ministère du Plan et de la Coopération

9.3 Name of a government

The name of a government is the name of the territory it governs. This may be a country, province, or state, or a city.

Use the short form of the name of the government.

Examples
Australia (not Commonwealth of Australia)
Côte d'Ivoire (not République de Côte d'Ivoire)

9.4 Language of the name of the government

Be consistent in the use of a language for the name of the government, by selecting one of the following two options:

Option 1: stand-alone system, unilingual system, or multilingual system with no centralized database

Enter the name of the government in the language of the system, or enter it consistently in one of the languages of the system.

Examples
If the language of the system is English:
Spain
Germany
Sweden
ANNEX 2: CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE RULES

If the language of the system is French:
Espagne
Allemagne
Suède

If the languages of the system are Portuguese and Spanish, and Spanish is chosen as the language in which names of governments are entered consistently:
España
Alemania
Suecia

Option 2: multilingual system with a centralized database

a) Enter the name of the government in the language of the government.

Examples
España
Deutschland
Sverige

b) If the government has more than one official language, select the language version that corresponds to the official language in which the government body is cited on the item.

Example
Switzerland has three official language forms of its name — Schweiz, Suisse, and Svizzera.

Select the German form of the name when the item is in German, the French form when the item is in French, and the Italian form when the item is in Italian, as in the following example:
Schweiz. Politisches Departement
Suisse. Département Politique
Svizzera. Dipartimento Politico

c) A complete list of names of governments in the language of the government can be found in Annex 9, Names of governments in the language of the government.

9.5 Governments below the national level

For governments below the national level (i.e. state, provincial, and city governments), add an appropriate distinguishing term in parentheses after the name of the government.

Examples
Québec (Province)
Québec (Ville)
9.6 Government bodies entered as a subheading under the name of the government

The following types of government body are entered as a subheading under the name of the government.

a) Government ministries and departments, branches, sections, units, offices, etc. of government ministries.

Examples
United States. Office of Technology Assessment
Liberia. Ministry of Planning and Economic Affairs
Mauritanie. Direction de la Statistique

b) Government commissions and committees

Example
Canada. Metric Commission

c) Legislative bodies

Example
United Kingdom. Parliament

d) Embassies and consulates

Examples
France. Ambassade (London)
Sri Lanka. High Commission (Canada)

e) Delegations to international organizations

Example
Uruguay. Delegación en las Naciones Unidas

f) Chiefs of state and heads of government

Examples
France. Premier Ministre
United States. President
g) Courts

Example
United Kingdom. Crown Court (Manchester)

h) Armed services

Example
United States. Army Map Service

10 Place and Country Code

10.1 Add, after the name of the body, the place (town or city) where the body is located.

Exception Do not add the place after the names of government bodies entered as subheadings under the name of the government.

10.2 Follow the guidelines in Annex 5 for entering place names.

10.3 Always add the ISO two-letter country code corresponding to the country where the body is located (see Annex 10).

Examples
FAO, Rome IT
WHO. Regional Office for the Western Pacific, Manila PH
Biblioteca Nacional de Agricultura, Brasília BR
Carleton University, Ottawa, ON CA
Institut du Sahel, Bamako ML

But
Canada. Department of the Environment CA
Ethiopia. Ministry of Rural Development ET
Uttar Pradesh (State). Department of Social Welfare IN

10.4 In the bibliographic record, the place will be entered in subfield c and the country code in subfield d of the appropriate field. In the computerized corporate name authority records suggested at the beginning of this annex, the place is entered in subfield c and the country code in subfield d of field 901.

Examples
^aFAO^cRome^dIT
^aCanada. Department of the Environment^dCA
11 Capitalization and Punctuation

11.1 Capitalize each significant word in the name of the body. (Although rules for capitalization vary in different languages, this rule has been adopted for consistency and convenience.)

11.2 Do not enter a period at the end of any of the fields.

11.3 Do not enter the hyphen in hyphenated words unless the two parts of the word can stand alone as separate words.

Examples

Enter: Co-operation as Cooperation
       Inter-regional as Interregional
       Sub-Saharan as SubSaharan

But retain the hyphen in:
       Round-table
       East-West
ANNEX 3: GUIDE TO SUBJECT INDEXING AND RETRIEVAL

Note The examples in this annex are taken from the English edition of the Macrothesaurus for information processing in the field of economic and social development.31

1 SUBJECT INDEXING

The primary aim of subject indexing is to allow the user seeking information on a particular subject to retrieve all of the relevant items in the collection. In a computerized system, subject retrieval is carried out by searching the database for the relevant subject indexing terms.

1 The Thesaurus

In most computerized information systems, indexing terms are selected from a thesaurus. In a thesaurus, the indexing terms (called “descriptors”) are presented in such a way as to show their relationship to each other.

For example, the Macrothesaurus contains the following sections:

- a main, alphabetically arranged section giving full information about each descriptor,
- a section entitled “Descriptor groups”, arranged by facet number,
- a hierarchical display, and
- a KWOC (Key Word Out of Context) index.

Here is an example of an entry in the main alphabetical section of the Macrothesaurus:

INDUSTRIAL CROPS
CULTURES INDUSTRIELLES / CULTIVOS INDUSTRIALES - 07.07.02
Refers to crops grown on a large scale and processed with mechanical equipment.

UF: CASH CROPS
TT: CROPS
BT: CROPS
NT: COCOA
  COCONUTS
  COFFEE
  COTTON
  FLAX
  HEVEAS
  OIL CROPS
  OPIUM
  SUGAR BEETS
  SUGAR CANE
  TEA
  TOBACCO
RT: AGROINDUSTRY

The French and Spanish equivalents of the descriptor are given, followed by the facet number, indicating the broad subject group to which the descriptor belongs. The next part of the entry is the scope note, explaining how the descriptor is to be used.

The initials UF (Used For) indicate that a “Use” reference (equivalent to a “See” reference) has been made from this term:

CASH CROPS
USE: INDUSTRIAL CROPS

The initials TT (Top Term), BT (Broader Term), NT (Narrower Term), and RT (Related Term) indicate the place of the descriptor within a hierarchy.

Top Term means the most general term in the hierarchy. For example, in the hierarchy:

ANIMALS
   DOMESTIC ANIMALS
      DOGS

the Top Term is ANIMALS.

Broader Term means a term that is more general than the descriptor. For example, DOMESTIC ANIMALS is the Broader Term of DOGS.

Narrower Term means a term that is more specific than the descriptor. For example, DOGS is a Narrower Term of DOMESTIC ANIMALS.

Related Term means a term that is neither more general nor more specific than the descriptor, but that is related to it. For example, INDUSTRIAL CROPS and AGROINDUSTRY are related to each other, but they are not in the same hierarchical line.

2 Determining the Subject Matter of the Item

2.1 To determine the subject matter of the item read the title page, preface, introduction, contents list, opening paragraphs, and conclusion.

2.2 Do not rely solely on a summary appearing on the item itself.

2.3 Do not read the whole document unless it is not otherwise possible to determine the subject (e.g., if there is no contents list, introduction, etc., or if the subject matter is difficult to understand).

2.4 As you scan the item, make a list of the concepts covered, including countries and regions, and international systems and organizations.

Make a note of the concepts that are the primary subject of the item. These will be entered in the primary descriptor field.

Do not list concepts that are mentioned only briefly and for which little substantial information is given. Put yourself in the place of the user and ask yourself whether, if you were looking for information on this subject, you would find this particular item relevant.
3 Selecting Descriptors

The next step is to translate the concepts in the list into the appropriate descriptors.

First, however, become familiar with the arrangement of the thesaurus by reading the introduction and perusing each section.

3.1 For each concept, consult the alphabetical display to find the most appropriate descriptor. Determine whether it is appropriate by perusing the scope note, the descriptor group to which it belongs, and the UF, BT, NT, and RT terms.

Examples

1. The item treats the subject “on-the-job training”. In the alphabetical display of descriptors, the following entry is found:

   ON-THE-JOB TRAINING
   USE: IN-SERVICE TRAINING

   Under the descriptor IN-SERVICE TRAINING, the following scope note is found:
   Training given during active, paid work-periods.
   This corresponds to the subject of the item, so the descriptor IN-SERVICE TRAINING is selected.

2. The item is a list of codes for the representation of names of languages. In the alphabetical display of descriptors, the following entry is found:

   CODES
   CODES/CODIGOS - 04.01.01
   NT: BUILDING CODES
   LABOUR CODE
   RT: REGULATIONS

   The descriptor CODES is obviously not used in the same sense as in the document. Therefore, this descriptor is NOT selected. (Instead, the more general descriptor TERMINOLOGY is chosen.)

3.2 Select the most specific descriptor that expresses the concept.

Example

The concept “natural fibres” has been listed. Under the descriptor NATURAL FIBRES, the following Narrower Terms are listed:

   ANIMAL FIBRES
   PLANT FIBRES

   The item deals only with plant fibres. Therefore, the descriptor PLANT FIBRES is selected.

3.3 However, if the item deals broadly with an array of subjects, choose a general descriptor rather than several specific ones.
Example
The item discusses energy resources in general, mentioning each kind of energy resource—electric, gas, nuclear, biomass, solar, wind, water, etc. The descriptor ENERGY RESOURCES is selected.

3.4 If you do not find a suitable descriptor in the alphabetical display, turn to the other sections of the thesaurus.

Examples
1. The concept “job sharing” does not appear in the alphabetical listing. However, under the heading SHARING in the KWOC index, the descriptor WORK SHARING is found. In the alphabetical section, the scope note under WORK SHARING indicates that it has the same meaning as job sharing. The descriptor WORK SHARING is therefore selected.

2. The concept “shanty town” does not appear in the alphabetical listing. Under the subject category for urban areas — 14.04.03 — the descriptor SLUMS is found. The descriptor SLUMS is checked in the alphabetical listing and is selected.

3.5 If you do not find a descriptor that expresses the concept precisely, either use a broader descriptor, or combine several descriptors.

Examples
1. The subject of the item is “handpumps”. There is no descriptor for this concept, so the more general descriptor PUMPS is selected.

2. The concept “microcomputer software” has been listed. In the alphabetical section of the thesaurus, the descriptor MICROCOMPUTERS is found, and a USE reference from “software” to COMPUTER PROGRAMMES. Two descriptors are therefore chosen to express this concept: MICROCOMPUTERS and COMPUTER PROGRAMMES.

3.6 As you become more familiar with the thesaurus, the appropriate descriptors will come to mind as you scan the item and note down the concepts. However, always check the descriptors in the thesaurus to be sure they are valid and that they are properly spelled. If you do not enter a descriptor accurately, it will not be found in a search. Printing an alphabetical list of the descriptors used in the database from time to time will help reveal any errors that may have occurred.

3.7 If it is the policy of the information system to do so, select local descriptors from the authority list maintained by the system. Local descriptors will probably include names of national institutions and names of geographic entities that do not come into the scope of the thesaurus, such as names of persons, states, provinces, towns, lakes, and rivers.

3.8 If you encounter a new technology or concept in the item, consider proposing it as a new descriptor to the agency that manages the thesaurus. Follow the guidelines of the thesaurus management agency for proposing a new descriptor.
4 Entering the Descriptors in the Bibliographic Record

To facilitate the production of printed subject and geographic indexes, this manual provides three fields for descriptors selected from the thesaurus: Primary descriptors (300), Geographic descriptors (302), and Secondary descriptors (301).

4.1 Primary descriptors (300)

A maximum of six descriptors that describe the main subjects of the item is entered in this field. These descriptors are used to create a printed subject index. For this reason, descriptors that are not meaningful as entries in an index, i.e., terms that are only meaningful when combined with other descriptors in an on-line search are not entered in this field.

The following descriptors are examples of those that should be excluded from field 300:

- administrative aspects
- financial aspects
- mission reports
- conference papers

Also excluded from this field are geographic descriptors. These are entered in field 302.

Descriptors indicating the form of the item, such as dictionaries, manuals, directories, thesauri, and bibliographies, should only be entered in field 300 if the individual documentation centre judges them to be useful entries in a printed index.

4.2 Geographic descriptors (302)

In this field, names of countries and regions selected from the thesaurus are entered.

The following descriptors are examples of those entered in field 302:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Africa</th>
<th>Oceania</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Arab Gulf States</td>
<td>Sahara</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cuba</td>
<td>Sahel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Eastern Europe</td>
<td>South America</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>South East Asia</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Descriptors such as the following should not be entered in field 302, but in fields 300 or 301:

- Arab countries
- arid zone
- ASEAN countries
- Atlantic Ocean
- capitalist countries
- colonial countries
- developed countries
- developing countries
- English-speaking Africa
- equatorial zone
- French-speaking Africa
- Indian Ocean
- landlocked countries
- least developed countries
- OECD countries
- Pacific Ocean
- socialist countries
- tropical zone

Option

Depending on the needs of its users, a particular information system may decide to enter some of the descriptors from the above list in field 302.
4.3 Secondary descriptors (301)

The remainder of the subject descriptors selected from the thesaurus are entered in field 301.

Example

The item is the proceedings of a seminar on wood-based energy in Tanzania.

300  <FUELWOOD><ENERGY POLICY>
301  <BIOMASS><ENERGY CONSUMPTION><CONFERENCE REPORT><LIST OF PARTICIPANTS>
302  <TANZANIA>

The item will appear in a subject index under the headings FUELWOOD and ENERGY POLICY.

It will appear in a geographic index under the heading TANZANIA.

It can be retrieved in an on-line search using any of the descriptors in the three fields.

4.4 Optional descriptor fields

Two optional fields have been provided for descriptors that are not in the thesaurus.

- **Field 303** — Local descriptors is reserved for terms that an individual documentation centre might require, that do not fall within the scope of the thesaurus, such as names of persons or names of cities.

- **Field 304** — Proposed descriptors is used for descriptors that the documentation centre wishes to propose for inclusion in the thesaurus.

Descriptors in these fields would be available for searching but would not normally be included in printed subject indexes. However, individual documentation centres may decide to include them in printed subject indexes if they wish.

II SUBJECT RETRIEVAL

Once the descriptors are entered in the record, a fast-access path to each descriptor is created, i.e., each descriptor is automatically placed in an inverted file in the computer memory together with information indicating in which records and in which fields it is found.

**Note**  In MICRO-ISIS, the maximum length of an entry in the inverted file is 30 characters. Any element longer than 30 characters will be truncated. For example, the descriptor NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORDER will appear in the inverted file as NEW INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC ORD. You should be aware of this when carrying out a search.

It is also possible to retrieve information using free-text searching, i.e., by requesting the system to scan all the records in the database until the required information is found. This is much slower than inverted file searching and, therefore, elements that are often used for retrieval, such as the descriptors, title words, authors, and date, should be inverted.
1 Steps in Subject Retrieval

1.1 The first step in subject retrieval is the translation of the information needs of the user into descriptors selected from the thesaurus.

Example

The user has asked for information on the tourist industry in the West Indies. The thesaurus provides the following two USE references:

TOURIST INDUSTRY
USE: TOURISM

WEST INDIES
USE: CARIBBEAN

Under TOURISM are found the following related terms that would also be of interest to the user:

TOURISM DEVELOPMENT
TOURISM INFRASTRUCTURE
TOURISM POLICY

Under CARIBBEAN, the 23 countries of the Caribbean are listed.

All of these descriptors will be used for the search.

1.2 The next step is to combine the descriptors using Boolean operators. These are:

AND (A AND B means “retrieve all items indexed with Term A, but only if Term B is also present.”)

OR (A OR B means “retrieve all items indexed with either Term A or Term B.”)

NOT (A NOT B means “retrieve items indexed with Term A, but only if Term B is not present.”)

In MICRO-ISIS, the following symbols are used for the Boolean operators:

* AND + OR ^ NOT

MICRO-ISIS provides two ways of simplifying the combining of descriptors:

• the right truncation feature, which allows retrieval of all descriptors beginning with the same character string by entering the character string followed by a dollar sign. For example, to find all descriptors beginning with the string TOURISM, the search term TOURISMS$ is entered.

• the any table feature, which allows retrieval of all descriptors in a list, drawn up by the individual documentation centre according to its needs. For example, an “any table” for all of the Caribbean countries will save the documentalist from having to type in the names of the 23 countries of that region.

To carry out our search on tourism in the Caribbean, the following search formulation is entered:

TOURISMS$ * ANY CARIBBEAN
MICRO-ISIS provides two other features for refining the search:

- **proximity searching**, which allows terms to be retrieved only if they are next to each other or within a given number of words of each other. This is particularly useful when searching on title words.
- **field level searching**, which allows retrieval of a term only if it is found in a particular field. (Note that, in MICRO-ISIS, unless the field is specified, the term will be retrieved regardless of where it is in the record, as long as it has been inverted.)

**Note** In the application described in this manual, to retrieve a descriptor regardless of which descriptor field it is in, use the field identifier 301. To retrieve a descriptor only if it represents the main subject of the item, use the field identifier 300.

**Examples**

1. To find the phrase “greenhouse effect” (heating up of the Earth’s atmosphere) in the title, without retrieving items that treat greenhouses, the search strategy would be:
   
   GREENHOUSE . EFFECT/(100)
   
   That is, retrieve these two terms only if they are next to each other in **field 100** — Title.

2. Let us suppose that the search for information on tourism in the Caribbean produced too many items of marginal interest. To retrieve only those items in which tourism is one of the main subjects of the item, the search for the subject tourism may be restricted to **field 300** by entering:
   
   TOURISM$//(300) * ANY CARIBBEAN/(301)

More information about retrieval using MICRO-ISIS can be found in the *Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual* (version 2.3), part 2, section 7, The CDS/ISIS Search Language. Details concerning field level and proximity searching are described in paragraph B.2.c) of that section.

### 2 Multilingual Retrieval and Retrieval using Thesaurus Structure

A special program, written using the programing feature of MICRO-ISIS, will allow multilingual retrieval, and retrieval using the relations among the descriptors in the thesaurus.

#### 2.1 Multilingual retrieval

When a multilingual thesaurus is used for indexing, the program will permit all items on a particular subject to be retrieved, regardless of the language used for indexing and regardless of the language used for searching.

---

32 This manual is used with version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS. A file called READ.ME on the MICRO-ISIS distribution diskette provides additional information unique to version 3.07 of MICRO-ISIS.

33 The program is available from the OECD, Paris.
Example

The languages of the system are English, French, and Spanish, and the items in the database have been indexed using any one of these languages. The descriptors are selected from a trilingual (English, French, and Spanish) thesaurus.

The users of the system can interrogate the database in any of the three languages and retrieve all relevant items, regardless of the language used for indexing.

2.2 Searching on broader, narrower, and related terms

The program will allow automatic searching on the broader, narrower, and related terms of a descriptor.

Example

The user is seeking information on cooperatives. Besides the descriptor COOPERATIVES, the user wishes to search on all of the narrower terms of this descriptor — AGRICULTURAL COOPERATIVES, CONSUMER COOPERATIVES, CREDIT COOPERATIVES, HOUSING COOPERATIVES, etc.

Instead of typing each of these descriptors, all items indexed with either cooperatives or any of its narrower terms can be retrieved.
A serial is a publication issued in successive parts, bearing numerical or chronological designations, and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, newsletters, annuals, and monographic series.

Examples

Scientific American
Canadian Psychiatric Association journal
Study abroad
Statistical yearbook — United Nations
AFRO technical papers
Global 1
SQB

To facilitate control over parts of serials entered in the bibliographic database (periodical articles and monographs published within monographic series), and to ensure consistency in the way serial titles are entered, a Serials Authority File (SAF) should be used.

The SAF contains the authoritative form of the serial title entered in field 200 and of the monographic series title entered in field 140.

1 FORM OF THE SAF

The form of the SAF will depend on the frequency with which particular serial titles appear in the bibliographic database, and the amount of available computer storage space.

For the sake of clarity, the examples in part II of this annex assume that the SAF is in the form of a card file.

1 SAF in the Form of a Card File

The SAF in the form of a card file contains a card for each title in its authoritative form (main card), and cards containing cross references from variant forms of the title.

Each main card contains:

- the form of the title to be used in fields 140 or 200,
- for monographic series, an example of the part statement to show its correct form,
- if available, the ISSN,
- cross references to earlier or later versions of the title, and to other language editions of the serial,
- the variant forms from which “see” references have been made (preceded by an X), and
- the date on which the card was created or updated.
Example 1: Monographic series

Main card

World Fertility Survey technical bulletins
no. 009
X WFS technical bulletins 1988-08-01

See reference

WFS technical bulletins
See: World Fertility Survey technical bulletins 1988-08-01

Example 2: Periodical

Main card

Library quarterly
ISSN 0024-2519 1983-10-02

Example 3: Periodical

Main card

Revista Latinoamericana de estudios educativos
ISSN 0185-1284
Former title: Revista del Centro de Estudios Educativos 1980-12-01

Main card

Revista del Centro de Estudios Educativos
Later title: Revista Latinoamericana de estudios educativos 1980-12-01

2 Computerized SAF

In a system where a limited number of serial titles appear frequently in the bibliographic records, computerized serials authority records may be created in the bibliographic database to allow the entry of an authority code (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) in subfield z of field 140 and field 200, instead of the full serial title.

The advantages of computerized authority records are described in the Introduction, Section 8 — Computerized authority records.

The set of fields relating to the SAF records will be the following:
### ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

#### Serials Authority Records

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Repeatable</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Inversion technique</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>911</td>
<td>Serial title</td>
<td></td>
<td>400</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>912</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td></td>
<td>9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>913</td>
<td>See reference(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>914</td>
<td>See also other language edition(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>915</td>
<td>Former title(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>916</td>
<td>Later title(s)</td>
<td>R</td>
<td>400</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>997</td>
<td>Authority record notes</td>
<td></td>
<td>200</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>998</td>
<td>Authority record date</td>
<td></td>
<td>10</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>999</td>
<td>Record type</td>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fields 913 to 916 contain the various kinds of cross references. Note that field 914 is used only for other language editions that are published separately.

Field 997 contains information such as the source in which the title was verified and additional information about title changes.

Field 998 contains the date the record was created or last updated. The date is entered in the form YYYY-MM-DD, i.e., year-month-day, as in the examples below.

For serials authority records, field 999 will always contain the code S.

#### Examples

**MFN 38**
- 911 Canadian woman studies
- 912 0706-8204
- 913 Cahiers de la femme
- 915 Canadian women's studies
- 997 Name changed with v. 3, no. 2, 1981
- 998 1987-04-01
- 999 S

**MFN 35**
- 911 WHO chronicle
- 912 0042-9694
- 914 Crónica de la OMS%Chronique OMS
- 998 1988-08-04
- 999 S

**MFN 22**
- 911 Crónica de la OMS
- 912 0250-8591
- 914 WHO chronicle%Chronique OMS
- 998 1988-08-04
- 999 S
ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

MFN 26
911 Chronique OMS
912 0373-3556
914 WHO chronicle%Crónica de la OMS
998 1988-08-04
999 S

In the printout of the serials authority records used for consultation, the title in field 911 will be interfiled with the “See” references in field 913.34

Examples

Cahiers de la femme
SEE: Canadian woman studies (38)

Canadian woman studies (38)
ISSN: 0706-8204
FORMER TITLE: Canadian women’s studies

Chronique OMS (26)
ISSN: 0373-3556
OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Crónica de la OMS

Crónica de la OMS (22)
ISSN: 0250-8591
OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Chronique OMS

WHO chronicle (35)
ISSN: 0042-9694
OTHER LANG: Crónica de la OMS
Chronique OMS

II RULES FOR ENTRIES IN THE SAF

Note 1 These rules apply to all the kinds of publications that are covered by the definition of a serial, including periodicals, yearbooks, newsletters, newspapers, and monographic series.

Note 2 These rules are based on the rules for key title in the ISDS Manual.35

1 Choose the most prominent form of the title on the title page of the serial. If the serial lacks a title page, choose the form found, in order of preference, on the cover, on the masthead, in the introductory material, or elsewhere on the publication.

2 If the serial has parallel titles in two or more languages, choose only one language version. Choose, in order of preference:

34 To create this kind of index in MICRO-ISIS, use the special program SERIAL on the accompanying diskette (output is Annex 19, example 15).

ANNEX 4: SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE RULES

- the title that is the most prominent typographically, then
- the title that appears first on the title page.

Make a "See" reference from the language form(s) not chosen.

Example

The serial bears the titles:

Canadian Woman Studies
Cahiers de la femme

The first title is chosen:

Canadian woman studies

The following "See" reference is made in the SAF:

Cahiers de la femme
See: Canadian woman studies

3 If the documentation centre receives more than one language edition of the serial, make an entry for each language edition in the SAF. Make appropriate cross references to the other language edition(s).

Example

The documentation centre receives WHO chronicle in both the English and Spanish editions. The following two entries are made in the SAF:

WHO chronicle
Other lang: Crónica de la OMS
Crónica de la OMS
Other lang: WHO chronicle

4 Capitalize the first word of the title, proper nouns, and each significant word in the names of corporate bodies that are part of the title.

Examples

Journal of peasant studies
Jeune Afrique
Revista de la CEPAL
Library Association record
Annual report – World Bank

5 If the serial title begins with an article ("A", "An", and "The" or their equivalents in other languages), drop the article unless this would change the meaning of the title.

Example

Enter The library quarterly as: Library quarterly
If the initial article is retained, enclose it between triangular brackets, and capitalize the next word in the title. (In MICRO-ISIS, the triangular brackets allow the initial article to be ignored during sorting. They do not appear in printed output destined for the user.)

Example

<The> State of the world’s children

6 If the title of the serial is a generic word or phrase, not significant on its own, such as “bulletin” or “newsletter”, add the name of the issuing body in the form:

Generic phrase - Issuing body

Enter the name of the issuing body as it appears on the title page of the serial.

Examples

Newsletter - ESCAP, Regional Centre for Technology Transfer
Boletín - Oficina Regional de Ciencia y Tecnología de la Unesco para América Latina y el Caribe

7 When the serial is a supplement to another serial and has its own distinctive title, enter the supplement under its own name.

Example

Industrial production is a supplement to the serial Main economic indicators and is therefore entered under its own name.

8 When the serial is a supplement to another serial, and does not have a distinctive title of its own, enter the title in the form:

Parent title. Supplement title

Examples

Solid state physics. Supplement
Canadian statistical review. Weekly supplement

9 When the serial is a section or subseries of a parent serial, enter the title in the form:

Parent title. Section or subseries number and title

Examples

Journal of the Royal Statistical Society. Series A
Bulletin signalétique - Centre National de la Recherche Scientifique. 359, Maladies du sang
Make a “See” reference in the SAF from variant forms of the title to the established form of the title. “See” references are also made from other language versions of the title when the serial has parallel titles in two or more languages (see rule 2 above).

Examples

Social questions bulletin
   See: SQB

Bach Society bulletin
   See: Bulletin - Bach Society

WFS technical bulletins
   See: World Fertility Survey technical bulletins

Documents de l'Union - IUSSP
   See: IUSSP papers
ANNEX 5: GUIDELINES FOR ENTERING PLACE NAMES

These guidelines apply to place names entered in the following fields:

111 Corporate author(s)
112 Affiliation
113 Other associated institution(s)
114 Meeting(s)
121 Publisher
211 Corporate author(s) — parent

The place entered in these fields is usually a city or town, but may be a suburb, or, as in the case of Singapore and Bali, an island.

The standardization of place names entered in these fields is desirable to facilitate information retrieval and to allow the creation of indexes sorted by place name. For example, users often cannot recall precisely the name of a meeting but they do know the place where the meeting was held.

1 Language

Two options have been provided for the language in which the place name should be entered — one for unilingual systems and one for multilingual systems.

1.1 Option 1: unilingual systems

Enter the place name in the language of the system.

Examples

If the language of the system is English:

Geneva
Rome
Vienna
London

If the language of the system is French:

Genève
Rome
Vienne
Londres

1.2 Option 2: multilingual systems

Enter the place name in the official language of the place. Use reference books to determine the form of the name in its own language. The Europa yearbook gives the official languages of countries and the Times atlas gives the official names of cities.\(^\text{36}\)

\(^{36}\) For full bibliographic details, see Annex 16 — Bibliography.
ANNEX 5: GUIDELINES FOR ENTERING PLACE NAMES

Examples

Genève
Roma
Wien
München
Praha

If the place itself has more than one official language, choose the official language version corresponding to the language, or one of the languages, of the system. If this does not apply, choose the official language version most likely to be known by the users of the system.

2 Addition of State or Province Names and Other Qualifiers

2.1 Add the name of the state, province, or district after the place name if it is customary to do so. For Australia, Canada, and the United States, see Annex 11 — Abbreviations of state and province names.

Examples

Brisbane, Qld
Ann Arbor, MI
Burnaby, BC
Washington, DC
México, DF

2.2 If the place is a suburb, follow the suburb name with the name of the city of which it is part.

Examples

Legon, Accra
Diliman, Quezon City
Ryde, Sydney, NSW
ANNEX 6: GUIDE TO MANAGING ACQUISITIONS FIELDS

Documentation centres with a computerized bibliographic information system can use the bibliographic database to manage the processing of acquisitions. A record is created in the bibliographic database for each item at the time of ordering. Once the item is received, the same record is updated with cataloguing information.

The advantages of managing acquisitions in this way are:

- the information needs to be recorded only once, thus saving time and effort and reducing the risk of error,
- items on order can be retrieved in an on-line search under any data element (author, title, publisher, supplier, etc.) thus providing more access points than in a manual file,
- because of improved access to the information about the order, the risk of accidental ordering of duplicates is greatly reduced, and
- the computer record can be used for printing purchase orders and reminders.

Here is an example of a cycle through which an item and its record will pass:

1. The item is selected, let us say, from an announcement of new publications found in the newsletter of an institution.

2. A record is created in the bibliographic database with as much of the bibliographic information about the item as is available, together with the following elements of information:

   - how the item will be received: free, on exchange, or by payment (field 500),
   - the date of ordering (field 510),
   - the number of copies ordered (field 513),
   - the name of the person who requested or selected the item (field 514),
   - its price, if it is to be paid for (field 516),
   - the name of the supplier (field 515),
   - a processing status code showing that the item is on order and not yet received (field 400), and
   - the source of information for the request (in this case the name and issue number of the newsletter that announced the item). This is entered in the field provided for acquisitions notes (field 517).

3. The actual order or request letter is then prepared, either manually or by printing the computer record using a specially designed display format. A program to print purchase orders has been included on the diskette (see Annex 19: Section VI — Report generation).

4. At regular intervals, a search is made on the database to find items that have been on order for an unexpectedly long time. This is done by searching on the status code in field 400 and the date of ordering in field 510. Claims for these items are then either prepared manually or computer printed. The date on which the claim was made is entered in field 511 — Date claimed.

5. Any information sent by the supplier in relation to an order or a claim is entered in field 517 — Acquisition notes.
6. When the item arrives, the status code in field 400 is changed to show that the item has been received but has not yet been catalogued. The date of receipt is entered in field 512, and the price in field 516 is adjusted to reflect the actual price, if necessary.

7. The item is then fully catalogued by updating the same record, and the status code in field 400 is changed to reflect this.

Computerized supplier authority records

In the description of the supplier field (515), option 3 has been provided to allow the use of computerized supplier authority records.

In a system where purchase orders are computer-printed, and where most orders are addressed to a limited number of suppliers, the use of computerized supplier authority records saves both time and computer storage space by allowing a supplier code to be entered in the supplier field instead of the full name and address of the supplier.

In MICRO-ISIS, the supplier records must be in the same database as the bibliographic records. In this manual, it is suggested that the authority code be a four-letter mnemonic code representing the name of the supplier. Each supplier record includes a field for the authority code and a field for the supplier’s name and address.

In the bibliographic record, the four-letter supplier code is entered in subfield z of field 515. Whenever the record is used to print a purchase order, the full name and address from the authority record is printed in place of field 515.

In MICRO-ISIS, the link between field 515 and the supplier authority record is made through the L and REF functions in the CDS/ISIS formatting language. (For a description of these functions, see the Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual (version 2.3), part 2, section 4, The formatting language, paragraph F.4, functions.)

Here is a list of fields required in the supplier authority records:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Subfields</th>
<th>Length</th>
<th>Inversion technique</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>921</td>
<td>Supplier authority code</td>
<td>^a Supplier name</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>922</td>
<td>Supplier name and address</td>
<td>^a Supplier name</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^b Address — line 1</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>^a 4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^c Address — line 2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^d Address — line 3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>^e Country</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To create a unique entry in the inverted file for each supplier code, field 921 is inverted with a prefix. In the implementation on the accompanying diskette, the prefix “ZZX-” has been used.
Inversion of the supplier name in field 922 is optional.

Field 997 contains information such as the kind of material the supplier handles.

The date in field 998 is the date the record was created or the most recent date on which the information in the record was updated. It is entered in the form YYYYY-MM-DD, i.e., year-month-day, as in the example below.

For supplier authority records, field 999 will always contain the code X. This field will be inverted.

Example of a supplier authority record

| 921 | UNIB          |
| 922 | ^aUniversity Bookshop (Nigeria) Limited^bUniversity of Ibadan^cIbadan^eNigeria |
| 997 | Agency for FAO publications   |
| 998 | 1985-12-01   |
| 999 | X            |

When field 922 is printed on a computer-produced purchase order, each subfield appears on a new line.

Example

University Bookshop (Nigeria) Limited
University of Ibadan
Ibadan
Nigeria
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ENGLISH</th>
<th>FRENCH</th>
<th>SPANISH</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Jan</td>
<td>jan</td>
<td>enero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feb</td>
<td>fév</td>
<td>feb</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mar</td>
<td>mar</td>
<td>mar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Apr</td>
<td>avr</td>
<td>abr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>May</td>
<td>mai</td>
<td>mayo</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jun</td>
<td>jun</td>
<td>jun</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jul</td>
<td>jul</td>
<td>jul</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aug</td>
<td>août</td>
<td>ago</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sep</td>
<td>sep</td>
<td>set</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Oct</td>
<td>oct</td>
<td>oct</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Nov</td>
<td>nov</td>
<td>nov</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dec</td>
<td>déc</td>
<td>dic</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# ANNEX 8: LANGUAGE CODES

The language codes in this annex have been selected from table 1 — Alphabetical list of two-letter language symbols in *Code for the Representation of Names of Languages* (International Organization for Standardization: Geneva. 1988. ISO 639-1988),

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Language</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
<td>Af</td>
<td>Laotian</td>
<td>Lo</td>
<td>Afrikaans</td>
<td>Af</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albanian</td>
<td>Sq</td>
<td>Latin</td>
<td>La</td>
<td>Albanian</td>
<td>Sq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>Am</td>
<td>Latvian</td>
<td>Lv</td>
<td>Amharic</td>
<td>Am</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>Ar</td>
<td>Lithuanian</td>
<td>Lt</td>
<td>Arabic</td>
<td>Ar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenian</td>
<td>Hy</td>
<td>Malagasy</td>
<td>Mg</td>
<td>Armenian</td>
<td>Hy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Assamese</td>
<td>As</td>
<td>Malay</td>
<td>Ms</td>
<td>Assamese</td>
<td>As</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
<td>Az</td>
<td>Maltese</td>
<td>Mt</td>
<td>Azerbaijani</td>
<td>Az</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bengali</td>
<td>Bn</td>
<td>Nepali</td>
<td>Ne</td>
<td>Bengali</td>
<td>Bn</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhutani</td>
<td>Dz</td>
<td>Norwegian</td>
<td>No</td>
<td>Bhutani</td>
<td>Dz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
<td>Bg</td>
<td>Persian</td>
<td>Fa</td>
<td>Bulgarian</td>
<td>Bg</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burmese</td>
<td>My</td>
<td>Polish</td>
<td>Pl</td>
<td>Burmese</td>
<td>My</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Byelorussian</td>
<td>Be</td>
<td>Portuguese</td>
<td>Pt</td>
<td>Byelorussian</td>
<td>Be</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodian</td>
<td>Km</td>
<td>Punjabi</td>
<td>Pa</td>
<td>Cambodian</td>
<td>Km</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Zh</td>
<td>Romanian</td>
<td>Ro</td>
<td>Chinese</td>
<td>Zh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Croatian</td>
<td>Hr</td>
<td>Russian</td>
<td>Ru</td>
<td>Croatian</td>
<td>Hr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Czech</td>
<td>Cs</td>
<td>Sanskrit</td>
<td>Sa</td>
<td>Czech</td>
<td>Cs</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>Da</td>
<td>Serbian</td>
<td>Sr</td>
<td>Danish</td>
<td>Da</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>Nl</td>
<td>Serbo-Croatian</td>
<td>Sh</td>
<td>Dutch</td>
<td>Nl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>English</td>
<td>En</td>
<td>Sindhi</td>
<td>Sd</td>
<td>English</td>
<td>En</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Estonian</td>
<td>Et</td>
<td>Singhalese</td>
<td>Si</td>
<td>Estonian</td>
<td>Et</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td>Fi</td>
<td>Slovak</td>
<td>Sk</td>
<td>Finnish</td>
<td>Fi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French</td>
<td>Fr</td>
<td>Slovenian</td>
<td>Sl</td>
<td>French</td>
<td>Fr</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>German</td>
<td>De</td>
<td>Somali</td>
<td>So</td>
<td>German</td>
<td>De</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>El</td>
<td>Spanish</td>
<td>Es</td>
<td>Greek</td>
<td>El</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gujarati</td>
<td>Gu</td>
<td>Sudanese</td>
<td>Su</td>
<td>Gujarati</td>
<td>Gu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hausa</td>
<td>Ha</td>
<td>Swahili</td>
<td>Sw</td>
<td>Hausa</td>
<td>Ha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>Iw</td>
<td>Swedish</td>
<td>Sv</td>
<td>Hebrew</td>
<td>Iw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hindi</td>
<td>Hi</td>
<td>Tagalog</td>
<td>Tl</td>
<td>Hindi</td>
<td>Hi</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>Hu</td>
<td>Tamil</td>
<td>Ta</td>
<td>Hungarian</td>
<td>Hu</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Icelandic</td>
<td>Is</td>
<td>Thai</td>
<td>Th</td>
<td>Icelandic</td>
<td>Is</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesian</td>
<td>In</td>
<td>Tibetan</td>
<td>Bo</td>
<td>Indonesian</td>
<td>In</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>It</td>
<td>Turkish</td>
<td>Tr</td>
<td>Italian</td>
<td>It</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Ja</td>
<td>Ukrainian</td>
<td>Uk</td>
<td>Japanese</td>
<td>Ja</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Ko</td>
<td>Urdu</td>
<td>Ur</td>
<td>Korean</td>
<td>Ko</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>Uzbek</td>
<td>Uz</td>
<td>Kurdish</td>
<td>Ku</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>Vi</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Vietnamese</td>
<td>Vi</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

Sources


ISO 3166 Newsletter (used for name changes occurring after the publication of Names of States).

Note This list has been drawn up according to the following formula:

a) Apart from the exceptions in b and c below, the names correspond to the short form of the “original” name provided in IFLA’s Names of States.

b) When the “original” form of the name is in a non-Roman script, a translation of the name into the Roman-script language best known in the country has been chosen, rather than a transliteration of the original form. For example, for Algeria, the French form of the name — Algérie — has been used, rather than the transliteration of the original — Djazaïria.

c) When the short form of the “original” name, or its translation, is in one of the official Roman-script languages of the United Nations (English, French, and Spanish), and when this form differs from the form “to be used for all ordinary purposes in the United Nations” provided in the UN’s Names of Countries and Adjectives of Nationality, the United Nations form has been chosen. For example, for Libya, the United Nations form — Libyan Arab Jamahiriya — has been chosen.

The list is arranged by ISO two-letter country code (see Annex 10).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Name of government</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Andorra</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AE</td>
<td>United Arab Emirates</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Imārāt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>Afghanistan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AG</td>
<td>Antigua and Barbuda</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Anguilla</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AL</td>
<td>Shqipëri</td>
<td>(Albania)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AM</td>
<td>Armenia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AN</td>
<td>Nederlandse Antillen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AO</td>
<td>Angola</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AQ</td>
<td>Antarctica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AS</td>
<td>American Samoa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>Österreich</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU</td>
<td>Australia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AW</td>
<td>Aruba</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AZ</td>
<td>Azerbaijan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BA</td>
<td>Bosna i Hercegovina</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BB</td>
<td>Barbados</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Name of government</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BD</td>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BE</td>
<td>Belgique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>België</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BF</td>
<td>Burkina Faso</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BG</td>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Bălgarija</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BH</td>
<td>Bahrain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Bahrain</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BI</td>
<td>Burundi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BJ</td>
<td>Bénin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BM</td>
<td>Bermuda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BN</td>
<td>Brunei Darussalam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BO</td>
<td>Bolivia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BR</td>
<td>Brasil</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BS</td>
<td>Bahamas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BT</td>
<td>Bhutan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Druk-Ŷul; Bhutān</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BW</td>
<td>Botswana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BY</td>
<td>Belarus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BZ</td>
<td>Belize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CA</td>
<td>Canada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CC</td>
<td>Cocos (Keeling) Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CF</td>
<td>République Centrafricaine</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CG</td>
<td>Congo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>Schweiz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Suisse</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Svizzera</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CI</td>
<td>Côte d’Ivoire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CK</td>
<td>Cook Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CL</td>
<td>Chile</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CM</td>
<td>Cameroon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Cameroun</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CN</td>
<td>China</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Zhongguo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>Colombia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CR</td>
<td>Costa Rica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CU</td>
<td>Cuba</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CV</td>
<td>Cabo Verde</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CX</td>
<td>Christmas Island</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CY</td>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Kypros; Kibris</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CZ</td>
<td>Česká Republika</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DE</td>
<td>Deutschland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DJ</td>
<td>Djibouti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DK</td>
<td>Danmark</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DM</td>
<td>Dominica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DO</td>
<td>República Dominicana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DZ</td>
<td>Algérie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>French version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Djazairia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Name of government</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EC</td>
<td>Ecuador</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EE</td>
<td>Eesti</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EG</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EH</td>
<td>Sahara Occidental</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ER</td>
<td>Eritrea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ES</td>
<td>España</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ET</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FI</td>
<td>Suomi</td>
<td>Two official languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FJ</td>
<td>Fiji</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FK</td>
<td>Falkland Islands (Malvinas)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FM</td>
<td>Micronesia, Federated States of</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FO</td>
<td>Faerøyene</td>
<td>(Faroe Islands)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FR</td>
<td>France</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GA</td>
<td>Gabon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GB</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GD</td>
<td>Grenada</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GE</td>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GF</td>
<td>Guyane Française</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GH</td>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GI</td>
<td>Gibraltar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GL</td>
<td>Grenland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GM</td>
<td>Gambia</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GN</td>
<td>Guinée</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GP</td>
<td>Guadeloupe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GQ</td>
<td>Guinea Ecuatorial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GR</td>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Hellas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GS</td>
<td>South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Guatemala</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GU</td>
<td>Guam</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GW</td>
<td>Guiné-Bissau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GY</td>
<td>Guyana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HK</td>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Xianggang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HN</td>
<td>Honduras</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HR</td>
<td>Hrvatska</td>
<td>(Croatia)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HT</td>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>(Hungary)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HU</td>
<td>Magyarország</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>Two official languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Éire</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Israel</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>India</td>
<td>English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Bhārat</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

English version. Transliteration of the original: Misr

English version. Transliteration of the original: Eritra

English version. Transliteration of the original: Ityopya

English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Bharat
## Annex 9: Names of Governments in the Language of the Government

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Name of government</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IQ</td>
<td>Iraq</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-'Irāq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IR</td>
<td>Iran, Islamic Republic of</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IS</td>
<td>Ísland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Italia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JM</td>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JO</td>
<td>Jordan</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Urdun Al-Shabiya Al-Ishtirākiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Nippon</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KE</td>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KG</td>
<td>Kyrgyzstan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KH</td>
<td>Cambodge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KI</td>
<td>Kiribati</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KM</td>
<td>Comores</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KN</td>
<td>Saint Kitts and Nevis</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KP</td>
<td>Korea, Democratic People’s Republic of</td>
<td>English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Chosun minshu-chui inmin konghwa-guk</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KR</td>
<td>Korea, Republic of</td>
<td>English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Han Kook</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KW</td>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KY</td>
<td>Cayman Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>KZ</td>
<td>Kazakhstan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>Lao People’s Democratic Republic</td>
<td>English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Pathet Lao</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LB</td>
<td>Liban</td>
<td>French version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Lubnān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LC</td>
<td>Saint Lucia</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LI</td>
<td>Liechtenstein</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LK</td>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LR</td>
<td>Liberia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>Lesotho</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT</td>
<td>Lietuva</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LU</td>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>Latvija</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LY</td>
<td>Libyan Arab Jamahiriya</td>
<td>English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Al-Jamahiriyah Al-Arabiya Al-Libya Al-Shabiya Al-Ishtirākiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MA</td>
<td>Maroc</td>
<td>French version. Transliteration of the original: Morocco</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MC</td>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Moldova, Republic of</td>
<td>Three official languages. Official UN form (French): Madagascar</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MG</td>
<td>Madagascar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Madagascar Repoblika Demokratika</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Malagasy</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Madagasikara</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MH</td>
<td>Marshall Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Name of government</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>ML</td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MM</td>
<td>Myanmar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MN</td>
<td>Mongolia</td>
<td>English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original: Bügd Nayramdakh Mongol Ard Uls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MO</td>
<td>Macau</td>
<td>English version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Ao-mén</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MP</td>
<td>Northern Mariana Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MQ</td>
<td>Martinique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MR</td>
<td>Mauritanie</td>
<td>French version (official language). Transliteration of the original: Mūritaniā</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td>Montserrat</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MT</td>
<td>Malta</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MU</td>
<td>Mauritius</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MV</td>
<td>Maldives</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MW</td>
<td>Malawi</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MX</td>
<td>México</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MY</td>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MZ</td>
<td>Moçambique</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NA</td>
<td>Namibia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NC</td>
<td>Nouvelle-Calédonie</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NE</td>
<td>Niger</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NF</td>
<td>Norfolk Island</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NG</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NI</td>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NL</td>
<td>Nederland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NO</td>
<td>Norge</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NP</td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NR</td>
<td>Nauru</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NU</td>
<td>Niue</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NZ</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OM</td>
<td>Oman</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PA</td>
<td>Panamá</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PE</td>
<td>Perú</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PF</td>
<td>Polynésie Française</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PG</td>
<td>Papua New Guinea</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Filipinas</td>
<td>Two official languages. Official UN form (Spanish): Filipinas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PK</td>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Polska</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PM</td>
<td>Saint-Pierre-et-Miquelon</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PN</td>
<td>Pitcairn</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>Puerto Rico</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PW</td>
<td>Palau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PY</td>
<td>Paraguay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>QA</td>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RE</td>
<td>Réunion</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RO</td>
<td>România</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Name of government</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RU</td>
<td>Russian Federation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RW</td>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Sa’udiya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SB</td>
<td>Solomon Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SC</td>
<td>Seychelles</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SD</td>
<td>Sudan</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Sūdān</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SE</td>
<td>Sverige</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>Two official languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SH</td>
<td>Saint Helena</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SI</td>
<td>Slovenija</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SK</td>
<td>Slovensko</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SL</td>
<td>Sierra Leone</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SM</td>
<td>San Marino</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SN</td>
<td>Sénégal</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SO</td>
<td>Somalia</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Al-Sūmāl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SR</td>
<td>Suriname</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ST</td>
<td>São Tomé e Principe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SV</td>
<td>El Salvador</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SY</td>
<td>Syrian Arab Republic</td>
<td>English version (official UN form). Transliteration of the original:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>al-Jamhouriya al Arabia as-Souriya</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SZ</td>
<td>Swaziland</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TC</td>
<td>Turks and Caicos Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TD</td>
<td>Tchad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TF</td>
<td>Terres Australes Françaises</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TG</td>
<td>Togo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>English version. Transliteration of the original: Muang-Thai</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TJ</td>
<td>Tajikistan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TK</td>
<td>Tokelau</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TM</td>
<td>Turkmenistan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TN</td>
<td>Tunisie</td>
<td>French version. Transliteration of the original: Tūnis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO</td>
<td>Tonga</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP</td>
<td>East Timor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TR</td>
<td>Türkiye</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TT</td>
<td>Trinidad and Tobago</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TV</td>
<td>Tuvalu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TW</td>
<td>Taiwan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TZ</td>
<td>Tanzania, United Republic of</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UA</td>
<td>Ukraine</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UG</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UM</td>
<td>United States Minor Outlying Islands</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>US</td>
<td>United States</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UY</td>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 9: NAMES OF GOVERNMENTS IN THE LANGUAGE OF THE GOVERNMENT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Name of government</th>
<th>Notes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UZ</td>
<td>Uzbekistan</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VA</td>
<td>Vaticano</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VC</td>
<td>Saint Vincent and the Grenadines</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VE</td>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VG</td>
<td>Virgin Islands (British)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VI</td>
<td>Virgin Islands (US)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VN</td>
<td>Viet Nam</td>
<td>French version (official UN form)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VU</td>
<td>Vanuatu</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WF</td>
<td>Îles Wallis et Futuna</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WS</td>
<td>Samoa</td>
<td>Official UN form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YE</td>
<td>Yemen</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YT</td>
<td>Mayotte</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>YU</td>
<td>Jugoslavija</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZA</td>
<td>Suid-Afrika</td>
<td>Two official languages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZM</td>
<td>Zambia</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZR</td>
<td>Zaïre</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ZW</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX 10: ISO TWO-LETTER COUNTRY CODES

Sources


The list is arranged in alphabetical order of the English name of the country.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Code</th>
<th>Country</th>
<th>Code</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Afghanistan</td>
<td>AF</td>
<td>Cape Verde</td>
<td>CV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Albania</td>
<td>AL</td>
<td>Cayman Islands</td>
<td>KY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Algeria</td>
<td>DZ</td>
<td>Central African Republic</td>
<td>CF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>American Samoa</td>
<td>AS</td>
<td>Chad</td>
<td>TD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Andorra</td>
<td>AD</td>
<td>Chile</td>
<td>CL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Angola</td>
<td>AO</td>
<td>China</td>
<td>CN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Anguilla</td>
<td>AI</td>
<td>Christmas Island</td>
<td>CX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antarctica</td>
<td>AQ</td>
<td>Cocos (Keeling) Islands</td>
<td>CC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antigua and Barbuda</td>
<td>AG</td>
<td>Colombia</td>
<td>CO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Argentina</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>Comoros</td>
<td>KM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Armenia</td>
<td>AM</td>
<td>Congo</td>
<td>CG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Aruba</td>
<td>AW</td>
<td>Cook Islands</td>
<td>CK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Australia</td>
<td>AU</td>
<td>Costa Rica</td>
<td>CR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Austria</td>
<td>AT</td>
<td>Côte d’Ivoire</td>
<td>CI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Azerbaijan</td>
<td>AZ</td>
<td>Croatia</td>
<td>HR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Cuba</td>
<td>CU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahamas</td>
<td>BS</td>
<td>Cyprus</td>
<td>CY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bahrain</td>
<td>BH</td>
<td>Czech Republic</td>
<td>CZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bangladesh</td>
<td>BD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Barbados</td>
<td>BB</td>
<td>Denmark</td>
<td>DK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belarus</td>
<td>BY</td>
<td>Djibouti</td>
<td>DJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belgium</td>
<td>BE</td>
<td>Dominica</td>
<td>DM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Belize</td>
<td>BZ</td>
<td>Dominican Republic</td>
<td>DO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Benin</td>
<td>BJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bermuda</td>
<td>BM</td>
<td>East Timor</td>
<td>TP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bhutan</td>
<td>BT</td>
<td>Ecuador</td>
<td>EC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bolivia</td>
<td>BO</td>
<td>Egypt</td>
<td>EG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bosnia and Herzegovina</td>
<td>BA</td>
<td>El Salvador</td>
<td>SV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Botswana</td>
<td>BW</td>
<td>Equatorial Guinea</td>
<td>GQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bouvet Island</td>
<td>BV</td>
<td>Eritrea</td>
<td>ER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brazil</td>
<td>BR</td>
<td>Estonia</td>
<td>EE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Indian Ocean Territory</td>
<td>IO</td>
<td>Ethiopia</td>
<td>ET</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Brunei Darussalam</td>
<td>BN</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bulgaria</td>
<td>BG</td>
<td>Falkland Islands (Malvinas)</td>
<td>FK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burkina Faso</td>
<td>BF</td>
<td>Faroe Islands</td>
<td>FO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Burundi</td>
<td>BI</td>
<td>Fiji</td>
<td>FJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Finland</td>
<td>FI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cambodia</td>
<td>KH</td>
<td>France</td>
<td>FR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cameroon</td>
<td>CM</td>
<td>French Guiana</td>
<td>GF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Canada</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>French Polynesia</td>
<td>PF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>French Southern Territories</td>
<td>TF</td>
<td>Lesotho</td>
<td>LS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Liberia</td>
<td>LR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gabon</td>
<td>GA</td>
<td>Libyan Arab Jamahiriya</td>
<td>LY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gambia</td>
<td>GM</td>
<td>Liechtenstein</td>
<td>LI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td>GE</td>
<td>Lithuania</td>
<td>LT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Germany</td>
<td>DE</td>
<td>Luxembourg</td>
<td>LU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ghana</td>
<td>GH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Gibraltar</td>
<td>GI</td>
<td>Macau</td>
<td>MO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greece</td>
<td>GR</td>
<td>Macedonia, Former Yugoslav Republic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Greenland</td>
<td>GL</td>
<td>Republic of</td>
<td>MK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Grenada</td>
<td>GD</td>
<td>Madagascar</td>
<td>MG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guadeloupe</td>
<td>GP</td>
<td>Malawi</td>
<td>MW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guam</td>
<td>GU</td>
<td>Malaysia</td>
<td>MY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guatemala</td>
<td>GT</td>
<td>Maldives</td>
<td>MV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea</td>
<td>GN</td>
<td>Mali</td>
<td>ML</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guinea-Bissau</td>
<td>GW</td>
<td>Malta</td>
<td>MT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Guyana</td>
<td>GY</td>
<td>Marshall Islands</td>
<td>MH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Martinique</td>
<td>MQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Haiti</td>
<td>HT</td>
<td>Mauritania</td>
<td>MR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Heard and McDonald Islands</td>
<td>HM</td>
<td>Mauritius</td>
<td>MU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Honduras</td>
<td>HN</td>
<td>Mayotte</td>
<td>YT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hong Kong</td>
<td>HK</td>
<td>Mexico</td>
<td>MX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hungary</td>
<td>HU</td>
<td>Micronesia, Federated States of</td>
<td>FM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Moldova, Republic of</td>
<td>MD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iceland</td>
<td>IS</td>
<td>Monaco</td>
<td>MC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>India</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>Mongolia</td>
<td>MN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indonesia</td>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Montserrat</td>
<td>MS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iran, Islamic Republic of</td>
<td>IR</td>
<td>Morocco</td>
<td>MA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iraq</td>
<td>IQ</td>
<td>Mozambique</td>
<td>MZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ireland</td>
<td>IE</td>
<td>Myanmar</td>
<td>MM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Israel</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Italy</td>
<td>IT</td>
<td>Namibia</td>
<td>NA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Nauru</td>
<td>NR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jamaica</td>
<td>JM</td>
<td>Nepal</td>
<td>NP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Japan</td>
<td>JP</td>
<td>Netherlands</td>
<td>NL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Jordan</td>
<td>JO</td>
<td>Netherlands Antilles</td>
<td>AN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>New Caledonia</td>
<td>NC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kazakhstan</td>
<td>KZ</td>
<td>New Zealand</td>
<td>NZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kenya</td>
<td>KE</td>
<td>Nicaragua</td>
<td>NI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kiribati</td>
<td>KI</td>
<td>Niger</td>
<td>NE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea, Democratic People’s Republic of</td>
<td>KP</td>
<td>Nigeria</td>
<td>NG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Niue</td>
<td>NU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Korea, Republic of</td>
<td>KR</td>
<td>Norfolk Island</td>
<td>NF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kuwait</td>
<td>KW</td>
<td>Northern Mariana Islands</td>
<td>MP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kyrgyzstan</td>
<td>KG</td>
<td>Norway</td>
<td>NO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lao People’s Democratic Republic</td>
<td>LA</td>
<td>Oman</td>
<td>OM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Latvia</td>
<td>LV</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lebanon</td>
<td>LB</td>
<td>Pakistan</td>
<td>PK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Code</td>
<td>Country</td>
<td>Code</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palau</td>
<td>PW</td>
<td>Taiwan, Province of China</td>
<td>TW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Palestine [reserved code]</td>
<td>PS</td>
<td>Tajikistan</td>
<td>TJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Panama</td>
<td>PA</td>
<td>Tanzania, United Republic of</td>
<td>TZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Papua New Guinea</td>
<td>PG</td>
<td>Thailand</td>
<td>TH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Paraguay</td>
<td>PY</td>
<td>Togo</td>
<td>TG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Peru</td>
<td>PE</td>
<td>Tokelau</td>
<td>TK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Philippines</td>
<td>PH</td>
<td>Tonga</td>
<td>TO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pitcairn</td>
<td>PN</td>
<td>Trinidad and Tobago</td>
<td>TT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Poland</td>
<td>PL</td>
<td>Tunisia</td>
<td>TN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Portugal</td>
<td>PT</td>
<td>Turkey</td>
<td>TR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Puerto Rico</td>
<td>PR</td>
<td>Turkmenistan</td>
<td>TM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Turks and Caicos Islands</td>
<td>TC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Qatar</td>
<td>QA</td>
<td>Tuvalu</td>
<td>TV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Réunion</td>
<td>RE</td>
<td>Uganda</td>
<td>UG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Romania</td>
<td>RO</td>
<td>Ukraine</td>
<td>UA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Russian Federation</td>
<td>RU</td>
<td>United Arab Emirates</td>
<td>AE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rwanda</td>
<td>RW</td>
<td>United Kingdom</td>
<td>GB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>United States</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>United States Minor Outlying Islands</td>
<td>UM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Helena</td>
<td>SH</td>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>UY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Kitts and Nevis</td>
<td>KN</td>
<td>Uruguay</td>
<td>UY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Lucia</td>
<td>LC</td>
<td>Uzbekistan</td>
<td>UZ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Pierre and Miquelon</td>
<td>PM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saint Vincent and the Grenadines</td>
<td>VC</td>
<td>Vanuatu</td>
<td>VU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Samoa</td>
<td>WS</td>
<td>Vatican City State (Holy See)</td>
<td>VA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>San Marino</td>
<td>SM</td>
<td>Venezuela</td>
<td>VE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sao Tome and Principe</td>
<td>ST</td>
<td>Viet Nam</td>
<td>VN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Saudi Arabia</td>
<td>SA</td>
<td>Virgin Islands (British)</td>
<td>VG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Senegal</td>
<td>SN</td>
<td>Virgin Islands (US)</td>
<td>VI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seychelles</td>
<td>SC</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sierra Leone</td>
<td>SL</td>
<td>Wallis and Futuna Islands</td>
<td>WF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Singapore</td>
<td>SG</td>
<td>Western Sahara</td>
<td>EH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovakia</td>
<td>SK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Slovenia</td>
<td>SI</td>
<td>Yemen</td>
<td>YE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Solomon Islands</td>
<td>SB</td>
<td>Yugoslavia</td>
<td>YU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Somalia</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Africa</td>
<td>ZA</td>
<td>Zaire</td>
<td>ZR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>South Georgia and the South Sandwich Islands</td>
<td>GS</td>
<td>Zimbabwe</td>
<td>ZW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spain</td>
<td>ES</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sri Lanka</td>
<td>LK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sudan</td>
<td>SD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Suriname</td>
<td>SR</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Svalbard and Jan Mayen Islands</td>
<td>SJ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Swaziland</td>
<td>SZ</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sweden</td>
<td>SE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Switzerland</td>
<td>CH</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Syrian Arab Republic</td>
<td>SY</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 11: ABBREVIATIONS OF STATE AND PROVINCE NAMES

#### Australia

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State/Province</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Abbreviation for Country</th>
<th>Country</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Australian Capital Territory</td>
<td>ACT</td>
<td>South Australia</td>
<td>SA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New South Wales</td>
<td>NSW</td>
<td>Tasmania</td>
<td>Tas</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northern Territory</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>Victoria</td>
<td>Vic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Queensland</td>
<td>Qld</td>
<td>Western Australia</td>
<td>WA</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

#### Canada

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Province/Region</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Name of Province/Region</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alberta</td>
<td>AB</td>
<td>Nova Scotia</td>
<td>NS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>British Columbia</td>
<td>BC</td>
<td>Ontario</td>
<td>ON</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Manitoba</td>
<td>MB</td>
<td>Prince Edward Island</td>
<td>PE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>New Brunswick</td>
<td>NB</td>
<td>Québec</td>
<td>PQ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Newfoundland</td>
<td>NF</td>
<td>Saskatchewan</td>
<td>SK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Northwest Territories</td>
<td>NT</td>
<td>Yukon Territory</td>
<td>YT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Source: Canada’s official contribution to ISO 3166/Part 2 (forthcoming) *Codes for the Representation of Names of Subentities*

#### United States

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>State</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Name of State</th>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Alabama</td>
<td>AL</td>
<td>Montana</td>
<td>MT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Alaska</td>
<td>AK</td>
<td>Nebraska</td>
<td>NE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arizona</td>
<td>AZ</td>
<td>Nevada</td>
<td>NV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Arkansas</td>
<td>AR</td>
<td>New Hampshire</td>
<td>NH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>California</td>
<td>CA</td>
<td>New Jersey</td>
<td>NJ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Colorado</td>
<td>CO</td>
<td>New Mexico</td>
<td>NM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Connecticut</td>
<td>CT</td>
<td>New York</td>
<td>NY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Delaware</td>
<td>DE</td>
<td>North Carolina</td>
<td>NC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>District of Columbia</td>
<td>DC</td>
<td>North Dakota</td>
<td>ND</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Florida</td>
<td>FL</td>
<td>Ohio</td>
<td>OH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Georgia</td>
<td>GA</td>
<td>Oklahoma</td>
<td>OK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hawaii</td>
<td>HI</td>
<td>Oregon</td>
<td>OR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Idaho</td>
<td>ID</td>
<td>Pennsylvania</td>
<td>PA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Illinois</td>
<td>IL</td>
<td>Rhode Island</td>
<td>RI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Indiana</td>
<td>IN</td>
<td>South Carolina</td>
<td>SC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Iowa</td>
<td>IA</td>
<td>South Dakota</td>
<td>SD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kansas</td>
<td>KS</td>
<td>Tennessee</td>
<td>TN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Kentucky</td>
<td>KY</td>
<td>Texas</td>
<td>TX</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Louisiana</td>
<td>LA</td>
<td>Utah</td>
<td>UT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maine</td>
<td>ME</td>
<td>Vermont</td>
<td>VT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Maryland</td>
<td>MD</td>
<td>Virginia</td>
<td>VA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Massachusetts</td>
<td>MA</td>
<td>Washington</td>
<td>WA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Michigan</td>
<td>MI</td>
<td>West Virginia</td>
<td>WV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minnesota</td>
<td>MN</td>
<td>Wisconsin</td>
<td>WI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mississippi</td>
<td>MS</td>
<td>Wyoming</td>
<td>WY</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Missouri</td>
<td>MO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Full Name</td>
<td>Other lang</td>
<td>Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-----------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACNUR</td>
<td>Oficina del Alto Comisionado de las Naciones Unidas para los Refugiados</td>
<td>UNHCR, HCR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIEA</td>
<td>Agence Internationale de l’Energie Atomique</td>
<td>IAEA, OIEA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AIF</td>
<td>Asociación Internacional de Fomento</td>
<td>IDA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALADI</td>
<td>Asociación Latinoamericana de Integración</td>
<td>LAIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Association Latinoaméricaine pour l’Intégration</td>
<td>ALALE, ALALC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALALC</td>
<td>Asociación Latinoamericana de Libre Comercio</td>
<td>LAFTA, ALALE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Former name:</td>
<td>ALADI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ALALE</td>
<td>Association Latinoaméricaine de Libre Echange</td>
<td>LAFTA, ALALC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Later name:</td>
<td>ALADI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASEAN</td>
<td>Association of South East Asian Nations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BIT</td>
<td>Bureau International du Travail</td>
<td>ILO, OIT</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARICOM</td>
<td>Caribbean Community</td>
<td>CARIFTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Former name:</td>
<td>CARIFTA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CARIFTA</td>
<td>Caribbean Free Trade Association</td>
<td>CARICOM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Later name:</td>
<td>CARICOM</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEA</td>
<td>Commission Economique pour l’Afrique</td>
<td>ECA, CEPA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEEAO</td>
<td>Commission Economique pour l’Asie et l’Extrême-Orient</td>
<td>ECAFE, CEPALO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Later name:</td>
<td>CESAP</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEAEO</td>
<td>Commission Economique pour l’Asie Occidentale</td>
<td>ECWA, CEPAO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Later name:</td>
<td>CESAO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEE</td>
<td>Commission Economique pour l’Europe</td>
<td>ECE, CEPE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEPA</td>
<td>Comisión Económica para Africa</td>
<td>ECA, CEA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEPAL</td>
<td>Comisión Económica para América Latina y el Caribe</td>
<td>CEPALC, ECLAC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEPALC</td>
<td>Commission Economique pour l’Amérique Latine et les Caraïbes</td>
<td>CEPAL, ECLAC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Other Lang.</td>
<td>Later name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEPALO</td>
<td>Comisión Económica para Asia y el Lejano Oriente</td>
<td>CEAEo, ECAFE</td>
<td>CESPAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEPAO</td>
<td>Comisión Económica para Asia Oriental</td>
<td>ECWA, CEAO</td>
<td>CESPAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CEPE</td>
<td>Comisión Económica para Europa</td>
<td>CEE, ECE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CESAO</td>
<td>Commission Economique et Sociale pour l'Asie Occidentale</td>
<td>ESCWA, CESPAP</td>
<td>CEAO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CESAP</td>
<td>Commission Economique et Sociale pour l'Asie et le Pacifique</td>
<td>ESCAP, CESPAP</td>
<td>CEAEO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CESPAO</td>
<td>Comisión Económica y Social para Asia Oriental</td>
<td>ESCWA, CESAO</td>
<td>CEPAO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CESPAP</td>
<td>Comisión Económica y Social para Asia y el Pacífico</td>
<td>ESCAP, CESPAP</td>
<td>CEPAO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CFI</td>
<td>Corporación Financiera Internacional</td>
<td>IFC, SFI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIJ</td>
<td>Cour Internationale de Justice</td>
<td>ICJ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNUCED</td>
<td>Conférence des Nations Unies sur le Commerce et le Développement</td>
<td>UNCTAD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNUDR</td>
<td>Centre des Nations Unies pour le Développement Régional</td>
<td>UNCRD</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECA</td>
<td>Economic Commission for Africa</td>
<td>CEA, CEPA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECAFE</td>
<td>Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East</td>
<td>CEAEo, CEPALO</td>
<td>ESCAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECE</td>
<td>Economic Commission for Europe</td>
<td>CEE, CEPE</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECLAC</td>
<td>Economic Commission for Latin America and the Caribbean</td>
<td>CEPAL, CEPALC</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ECWA</td>
<td>Economic Commission for Western Asia</td>
<td>CEAO, CEPAO</td>
<td>ESCWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Acronym</td>
<td>Description</td>
<td>Other lang</td>
<td>Former name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESCAP</td>
<td>Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific</td>
<td>CESAP, CESPAP</td>
<td>ECAFE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ESCWA</td>
<td>Economic and Social Commission for Western Asia</td>
<td>CESAO, CESPAX</td>
<td>ECWA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAO</td>
<td>Food and Agriculture Organization of the United Nations</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FID</td>
<td>International Federation for Documentation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FMI</td>
<td>Fonds Monétaire International</td>
<td>IMF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FNUAP</td>
<td>Fonds des Nations Unies pour les Activités en Matière de Population</td>
<td>UNFPA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GATT</td>
<td>General Agreement on Tariffs and Trade</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HCR</td>
<td>Haut Commissariat des Nations Unies pour les Réfugiés</td>
<td>UNHCR, ACNUR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IAEA</td>
<td>International Atomic Energy Agency</td>
<td>AIEA, OIEA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICAO</td>
<td>International Civil Aviation Organization</td>
<td>OACI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ICJ</td>
<td>International Court of Justice</td>
<td>CIJ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IDA</td>
<td>International Development Association</td>
<td>AIF</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFC</td>
<td>International Finance Corporation</td>
<td>SFI, CFI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IFLA</td>
<td>International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ILO</td>
<td>International Labour Office</td>
<td>BIT, OIT</td>
<td>OIT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Annex 12: Acronyms to be Used in Corporate Body Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Other lang</th>
<th>Later name</th>
<th>Former name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>IMCO</td>
<td>Inter-Governmental Maritime Consultative Organization</td>
<td>OMCI, OCMI</td>
<td>IMO</td>
<td>IMCO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMF</td>
<td>International Monetary Fund</td>
<td>FMI</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IMO</td>
<td>International Maritime Organization</td>
<td>OMI</td>
<td>IMCO</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IPPF</td>
<td>International Planned Parenthood Federation</td>
<td>FMI Internationale pour le Planning Familial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISO</td>
<td>International Organization for Standardization</td>
<td>Organisation Internationale de Normalisation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ITU</td>
<td>International Telecommunication Union</td>
<td>UIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAFTA</td>
<td>Latin American Free Trade Association</td>
<td>ALALE, ALALC</td>
<td>LAIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LAIA</td>
<td>Latin American Integration Association</td>
<td>ALADI</td>
<td>LAIA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OACI</td>
<td>Organisation de l’Aviation Civile Internationale</td>
<td>ICAO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAS</td>
<td>Organization of American States</td>
<td>OEA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OAU</td>
<td>Organization of African Unity</td>
<td>OUA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCDE</td>
<td>Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques</td>
<td>OECD</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OCMI</td>
<td>Organización Consultiva Marítima Intergubernamental</td>
<td>IMCO, OMCI</td>
<td>OMI</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OEA</td>
<td>Organisation des Etats Américains</td>
<td>OAS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OECD</td>
<td>Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development</td>
<td>OCDE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OIEA</td>
<td>Organismo Internacional de Energía Atómica</td>
<td>IAEA, AIEA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Full Name</th>
<th>Other lang</th>
<th>Former name</th>
<th>Later name</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OIT</td>
<td>Oficina Internacional del Trabajo</td>
<td>ILO, BIT</td>
<td>Organización Internacional del Trabajo</td>
<td>OMCI, OCMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMCI</td>
<td>Organisation Intergouvernementale Consultative de la Navigation Maritime</td>
<td>IMCO, OCMI</td>
<td>OMI</td>
<td>OMCI, OCMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMI</td>
<td>Organisation Maritime Internationale</td>
<td>IMO</td>
<td>Organización Marítima Internacional</td>
<td>OMCI, OCMI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMM</td>
<td>Organisation Météorologique Mondiale</td>
<td>WMO</td>
<td>Organización Meteorológica Mundial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMPI</td>
<td>Organisation Mondiale de la Propriété Intellectuelle</td>
<td>WIPO</td>
<td>Organización Mundial de la Propiedad Intelectual</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMS</td>
<td>Organisation Mondiale de la Santé</td>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>Organización Mundial de la Salud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONU</td>
<td>Organisation des Nations Unies</td>
<td>UN</td>
<td>Organización de las Naciones Unidas</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ONUDI</td>
<td>Organisation des Nations Unies pour le Développement Industriel</td>
<td>UNIDO</td>
<td>Organización de las Naciones Unidas para el Desarrollo Industrial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OOPS</td>
<td>Organismo de Obras Públicas y Socorro de las Naciones Unidas para los Refugiados de Palestina en el Cercano Oriente</td>
<td>UNRWA</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEC</td>
<td>Organization of Petroleum Exporting Countries</td>
<td>OPEP</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPEP</td>
<td>Organisation des Pays Exportateurs de Pétrole</td>
<td>OPEC</td>
<td>Organización de Países Exportadores de Petróleo</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OPS</td>
<td>Organisation Panaméricaine de la Santé</td>
<td>PAHO</td>
<td>Organización Panamericana de la Salud</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OUA</td>
<td>Organisation de l’Unité Africaine</td>
<td>OAU</td>
<td>Organización de la Unidad Africana</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAHO</td>
<td>Pan American Health Organization</td>
<td>OPS</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Full Name</th>
<th>Language(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>PNUD</td>
<td>Programme des Nations Unies pour le Développement</td>
<td>UNDP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNUE</td>
<td>Programme des Nations Unies pour l’Environnement</td>
<td>UNEP, PNUMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PNUMA</td>
<td>Programa de las Naciones Unidas para el Medio Ambiente</td>
<td>UNEP, PNUE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFI</td>
<td>Société Financière Internationale</td>
<td>IFC, CFI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UIT</td>
<td>Union Internationale des Télécommunications</td>
<td>ITU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UN</td>
<td>United Nations</td>
<td>ONU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNCRD</td>
<td>United Nations Centre for Regional Development</td>
<td>CNUDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNCTAD</td>
<td>United Nations Conference on Trade and Development</td>
<td>CNUCED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNDP</td>
<td>United Nations Development Programme</td>
<td>PNUD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNEP</td>
<td>United Nations Environment Programme</td>
<td>PNUE, PNUMA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Unesco</td>
<td>United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNFPA</td>
<td>United Nations Fund for Population Activities</td>
<td>FNUAP</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNHCR</td>
<td>Office of the United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees</td>
<td>HCR, ACNUR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNICEF</td>
<td>United Nations Children’s Fund</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNIDO</td>
<td>United Nations Industrial Development Organization</td>
<td>ONUDI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNITAR</td>
<td>United Nations Institute for Training and Research</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UNRISD</td>
<td>United Nations Research Institute for Social Development</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 12: ACRONYMS TO BE USED IN CORPORATE BODY FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Acronym</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Other Langs</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UNRWA</td>
<td>United Nations Relief and Works Agency for Palestine Refugees in the Near East</td>
<td>OOPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UPU</td>
<td>Universal Postal Union</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WHO</td>
<td>World Health Organization</td>
<td>OMS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WIPO</td>
<td>World Intellectual Property Organization</td>
<td>OMPI</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>WMO</td>
<td>World Meteorological Organization</td>
<td>OMM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH “MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS”

Note The following abbreviations are used in this table:

- MPR-DIS: Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems
- MIBIS: Manual for Preparing Records in Microcomputer-Based Bibliographic Information Systems
- M-I: MICRO-ISIS
- CCF: Common Communication Format
- AACR2: Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules, 2nd ed.
- ISDS: ISDS Manual

For full bibliographic citations, see the bibliography.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Resequenced record number</td>
<td>A100</td>
<td></td>
<td>For information on resequencing of records in M-I, see Annex 19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Participating centre record number</td>
<td>A110</td>
<td>001</td>
<td>In MIBIS, 001 is for acronym, and 002 is for record number proper. In M-I, 001 and 002 are created automatically at the time of data export</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library code and call number</td>
<td>A120</td>
<td></td>
<td>MIBIS field 410 is for location within the library</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Library code</td>
<td>A121</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call number</td>
<td>A122</td>
<td>411</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bibliographic level</td>
<td>A130</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level — documentary unit</td>
<td>A131</td>
<td>007</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Level — generic document</td>
<td>A132</td>
<td>008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Related record</td>
<td>A140</td>
<td>010</td>
<td>MIBIS has 3 fields — Record number of parent (010), of part(s) (011), and of other language version(s) (012)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relator</td>
<td>A141</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resequenced RN of related record</td>
<td>A142</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PCN of related record</td>
<td>A143</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record status</td>
<td>A150</td>
<td>003</td>
<td>MIBIS uses for new records</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country of origin of document</td>
<td>A160</td>
<td>009</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGRIS record type</td>
<td>A170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGRIS literary indicators</td>
<td>A180</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record-access code</td>
<td>A190</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author — documentary unit</td>
<td>B210</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>MIBIS field has subfield for role “a”, “b”</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH “MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>MIBIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Institution documentary unit (Idu)</td>
<td>B220</td>
<td>111&lt;sup&gt;ef&lt;/sup&gt; MIBIS has separate fields for corporate author(s) (111), affiliation (112), and other associated institutions(s) (113)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- name</td>
<td>B221</td>
<td>^a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- city</td>
<td>B222</td>
<td>^c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- country code</td>
<td>B223</td>
<td>^d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- authority code</td>
<td>B224</td>
<td>^z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sub-body</td>
<td>B225</td>
<td>^b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- role</td>
<td>B226</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- role expanded</td>
<td>B227</td>
<td>^e</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title of documentary unit</td>
<td>B230</td>
<td>100 MIBIS field 100 not repeatable.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>101 Parallel title entered in field 101 (CCF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translated title — English</td>
<td>B240</td>
<td>102</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translated title — French</td>
<td>B250</td>
<td>103</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translated title — Arabic</td>
<td>B260</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translated title — Spanish</td>
<td>B270</td>
<td>104</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>105 Translated title — other language</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author — generic document</td>
<td>B310</td>
<td>210 MIBIS field has subfield for role ^a, ^b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Institution — generic document (Igd)</td>
<td>B320</td>
<td>211</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- name</td>
<td>B321</td>
<td>^a</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- city</td>
<td>B322</td>
<td>^c</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- country code</td>
<td>B323</td>
<td>^d</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- authority code</td>
<td>B324</td>
<td>^z</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>- sub-body</td>
<td>B325</td>
<td>^b</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title of generic document (M/C)</td>
<td>B330</td>
<td>202</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume/part number — collection</td>
<td>B340</td>
<td>- MIBIS includes this in field 131 — Part statement (CCF)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title of serial</td>
<td>B410</td>
<td>200 MIBIS has separate field for monographic series (140) (CCF). Capitalization follows ISDS and AACR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Volume and part number — serial</td>
<td>B420</td>
<td>131 MIBIS includes pagination of part and volume no. of collection (CCF). Spacing follows AACR2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td>B430</td>
<td>201</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages of text</td>
<td>B540</td>
<td>021 MIBIS field is repeatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Languages of summaries</td>
<td>B560</td>
<td>022 MIBIS field is repeatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td></td>
<td>020 Language of analysis</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH "MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS"

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MPR-DIS</th>
<th>MIBIS</th>
<th>Tag</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Publisher</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher name</td>
<td>B610</td>
<td>121</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher city</td>
<td>B611</td>
<td>^b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher country code</td>
<td>B612</td>
<td>^a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date of imprint/issue — free form</td>
<td>B620</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>MIBIS allows names of seasons</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Year of imprint/issue</td>
<td>B630</td>
<td>123</td>
<td>MIBIS field is for date in ISO form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collation</td>
<td>B640</td>
<td>130</td>
<td>MIBIS field used for M/C only. Pagination of</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pagination/description</td>
<td>B641</td>
<td>^a</td>
<td>part entered in field <strong>131</strong> (CCF). Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collation notes</td>
<td>B642</td>
<td>^b,^c</td>
<td>follows AACR2 more closely</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Report number or symbol</td>
<td>B650</td>
<td>161</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td>B660</td>
<td>160</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td>B670</td>
<td>120</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting, conference, etc.</td>
<td>B710</td>
<td>114</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting name and number</td>
<td>B711</td>
<td>^a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting city</td>
<td>B712</td>
<td>^b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting country code</td>
<td>B713</td>
<td>^c</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting date</td>
<td>B714</td>
<td>^d</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Academic degree</td>
<td>B720</td>
<td>141^b</td>
<td>MIBIS also includes subfields for thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Patent</td>
<td>B730</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Development project</td>
<td>B740</td>
<td>142</td>
<td>MIBIS does not include value of investment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project name</td>
<td>B741</td>
<td>^a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project number</td>
<td>B742</td>
<td>^b</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Value of investment</td>
<td>B743</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td>B810</td>
<td>162</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ancillary data</td>
<td>B820</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes. Field longer and not repeatable</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Primary geographic area</td>
<td>C100</td>
<td></td>
<td>Same purpose served in MIBIS by entering</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary geographic area</td>
<td>C110</td>
<td></td>
<td>geographic descriptors in a separate field (302)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGRIS subject categories</td>
<td>C120</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEVISIS purpose code</td>
<td>C130</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Main category code — local</td>
<td>C140</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>MIBIS field is for broad subject heading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEVISIS sectoral codes</td>
<td>C150</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sectoral codes — local</td>
<td>C160</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Correspondence to other system</td>
<td>C170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 13: COMPARISON WITH “MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS”

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MPR-DIS</th>
<th>MIBIS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Field name</strong></td>
<td><strong>Tag</strong></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Descriptors</td>
<td>C210</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
<td>C220</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>C310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Administrative division</td>
<td>C410</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Natural regions</td>
<td>C430</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Statistical table</td>
<td>C510</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentalist</td>
<td>D100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date input</td>
<td>D120</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date changed</td>
<td>D140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MIBIS also includes fields for corporate name, serial title, and supplier authority records.
This table is provided for users wishing to exchange databases with other systems via the Common Communication Format (CCF). It shows the correspondence between the fields in the present manual (MIBIS) and the fields in the CCF.

All of the fields that are mandatory for the CCF are included in the present manual, except for CCF fields 021, 030, and 080, which can be created for data export as described below.

Note Fields that are mandatory for the CCF are marked (M).

CCF field 080 is described below under Segments. CCF fields 021 and 030 can be supplied with a constant value in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility, as follows:

1. Field 021A, level of completeness code. The codes are:
   - A All mandatory and all optional elements provided,
   - B All mandatory elements provided, and
   - C Less than all mandatory elements provided.

   Create this field in the reformatting FST containing either B or C (depending on whichever statement is true about all of the records in your database).

2. Field 030, character sets used in record. Information to be entered in this field is described in detail in the CCF itself.

Indicators

In the CCF, the first two characters of each field (before the first subfield delimiter) are reserved for numeric codes, called indicators, that give further information about the contents of the field or that indicate how the field is to be manipulated.

MIBIS does not include indicators. However, if data are being exported to a system that uses indicators, a default value of 00 may be supplied in front of each field in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility. For example, the format to transfer field 100 to CCF field 200A would be:

```
200 0 "00^A"v100
```

Segments

The CCF uses the term “segments” to denote sections of the bibliographic record that relate to different bibliographic items. It terms the part of the record that describes the target item as the primary segment, or segment 0. Other segments are termed secondary segments. The part of the record that describes an item at the next higher level in the hierarchical relationship is termed segment 1.

In MIBIS, there is a maximum of two segments in a record. The section of the record that describes the item in hand is equivalent to segment 0, and the section of the record that describes the parent item is equivalent to segment 1. MIBIS fields 008, 010, 200, 201, 202, 210, and 211 always belong

---

to segment 1. When the item is a chapter from a monograph or a collection (bibliographic level AM or AC), MIBIS fields 120, 121, 160, and 161 will belong to segment 1.

CCF field 080 (Segment linking field: general vertical relationship) should be created whenever segment 1 is present, that is, whenever MIBIS field 008 (Bibliographic level — parent) is present. CCF field 080 will always contain the code 02 in subfield A, and the code 0 in subfield B. In addition, the contents of field 008 will be transferred to CCF field 015 — Bibliographic level of secondary segment. For example, if field 008 contains M, CCF field 080 should be created containing: ^A02^B0, and CCF field 015 should be created containing: ^AM.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBIS</th>
<th>CCF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>001 Participating centre acronym</td>
<td>020A Source of record (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Identification of agency in coded form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>002 Participating centre record number</td>
<td>001 Record identifier (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>003 Record status</td>
<td>– (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– (Supply default value in reformatting FST)</td>
<td>021A Level of completeness code (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>– (Supply data in reformatting FST)</td>
<td>030 Character sets used in record (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005 Date record entered</td>
<td>022A Date entered on file (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006 Date record changed</td>
<td>– (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007 Bibliographic level</td>
<td>– Character 7 of CCF record label</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008 Bibliographic level — parent</td>
<td>015A Bibliographic level of secondary segment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009 Country of origin</td>
<td>– (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010 Record no. of parent</td>
<td>010A Record identifier for secondary segments</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011 Record no. of part(s)</td>
<td>– (Do not transfer to a CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012 Record no. of other language version(s)</td>
<td>– (Do not transfer to a CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020 Language of analysis</td>
<td>031A Language of the record (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(CCF codes are 3-letter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021 Language(s) of text</td>
<td>040A Language of item (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(CCF codes are 3-letter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022 Language(s) of summaries</td>
<td>041A Language of the summary</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(CCF codes are 3-letter)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100 Title</td>
<td>200A Title (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101 Parallel title(s)</td>
<td>210A Parallel title</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBIS</th>
<th>CCF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>102 Translated title — English</td>
<td>- (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103 Translated title — French</td>
<td>- (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>104 Translated title — Spanish</td>
<td>- (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>105 Translated title — other</td>
<td>- (No CCF field)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110 Personal author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Personal author</td>
<td>300 Name of person (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Role</td>
<td>^A Entry element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^B Other name elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^C Additional elements</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^F Role (noncoded)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111 Corporate author(s)</td>
<td>310 Name of corporate body (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Main body</td>
<td>^A Entry element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Sub-body</td>
<td>^B Other parts of name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^c Place</td>
<td>^D Address of corp. body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^d Country code</td>
<td>^E Country of corp. body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^z Authority code</td>
<td>^G Role (noncoded)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^Z Authority number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112 Affiliation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Main body</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Sub-body</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^c Place</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^d Country code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^z Authority code</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113 Other associated institutions(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Main body</td>
<td>310 Name of corporate body (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Sub-body</td>
<td>^A Entry element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^c Place</td>
<td>^B Other parts of name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^d Country code</td>
<td>^D Address of corp. body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^e Role</td>
<td>^E Country of corp. body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^z Authority code</td>
<td>^G Role (noncoded)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^Z Authority number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114 Meeting(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Meeting name and number</td>
<td>320 Name of meeting (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Place</td>
<td>^A Entry element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^c Country code</td>
<td>^J Number of meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^d Dates</td>
<td>^G Location of meeting</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^e Date — ISO form</td>
<td>^E Country</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^I Date of meeting (in free format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^H Date of meeting (in ISO format)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120 Edition</td>
<td>260A Edition statement (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121 Publisher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Publication place</td>
<td>400 Place of publication and publisher (M)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Publisher</td>
<td>^A Place of publication</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^c Country code</td>
<td>^B Name of publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^D Country of publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIBIS</td>
<td>CCF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date of publication/issue — free form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date of publication/issue — ISO form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^a Number of pages/pieces</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^b Description</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^c Dimensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part statement</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^a Volume/issue number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^b Pagination of part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Monographic series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^a Series title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^b Series part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^a Thesis designation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^b Degree</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^c Course</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^d Number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^a Project name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^b Project number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>160</td>
<td>ISBN(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>Document number(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>Availability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^a Personal author</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^b Role</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ANNEX 14: CORRESPONDENCE WITH THE COMMON COMMUNICATION FORMAT

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBIS</th>
<th>CCF</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>310</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^a Main body</td>
<td>^A Entry element</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^b Sub-body</td>
<td>^B Other parts of name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^c Place</td>
<td>^D Address of corp. body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^d Country code</td>
<td>^E Country of corp. body</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>^z Authority code</td>
<td>^Z Authority number</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>620A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>620A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>620A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>600A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>–</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The remainder of the MIBIS fields are local and do not have equivalents in the CCF.
Acronym
A word or set of initials formed of the initial letters of the significant words in a compound name, e.g., Unesco, UN.

Analytic level
See Bibliographic level

Any table
A list of terms that a particular documentation centre has chosen to group together to facilitate online retrieval. For example, an any table entitled “Any Africa” would comprise the names of all the countries and regions of Africa. A search using the search term “Any Africa” would automatically retrieve all records relating to any of the countries and regions of Africa.

Authority file
A tool to ensure consistency among like elements in bibliographic records by indicating the form of entry established for use in a particular information system. Examples include a Corporate Name Authority File, a personal name authority file, and a thesaurus of subject descriptors.

Bibliographic level
Indicates where the item stands in a set of hierarchical relationships. The following bibliographic levels have been identified:

Analytic
Refers to an item that is not issued separately but as part of a larger work, such as an article from a periodical or a chapter or contribution from a monograph.

Monographic
Refers to an item issued as a single physical piece that is complete in its own right, such as a book, a report, a thesis, or a map.

Collective
Refers to a multivolume item, composed of a finite number of volumes, issued either at the same time or over a period, that is complete in its own right, such as a two-volume report or a multivolume encyclopedia.

Serial
Refers to a publication issued in successive parts, at intervals, bearing a chronological and/or numerical designation, and intended to be continued indefinitely, such as a periodical, a newspaper, an annual report, or a monographic series.

Bibliographic record
A set of information describing one bibliographic item, stored in machine-readable form in a database.

Broader term (BT)
In a hierarchical arrangement of concepts, a concept that is more general than the concepts below it. For example, the term “fruit” is a broader term of the terms “apples”, “oranges”, and “grapes”.

- 215 -
ANNEX 15: GLOSSARY

Collection
A multivolume item comprising two or more physical pieces issued together or over a period of time. Examples include a two-volume report, and a multivolume encyclopedia.

Collective level
See Bibliographic level

Corporate body
An organization or group of persons that is identified by a name and acts as an entity. Corporate bodies include associations, institutions, governments, international organizations, and business firms.

Cross reference
An instruction directing the user from one heading in a catalogue or index to another. Cross references include “see” and “see also”, as well as the broader terms, narrower terms, etc. in a thesaurus.

Database
A set of machine-readable records that are standardized in format.

Descriptor
A word or phrase describing a concept, listed in a thesaurus, and used for subject indexing and retrieval.

Field
Part of a computer record reserved for a particular element of information, such as personal author, corporate author, or title.

Field tag
A group of characters that serves to identify a field in a database.

Heading
A name, word, or phrase entered in a standardized form that serves to provide an access point in a catalogue or index. For example, each author entered in the personal author field serves as a heading under which his or her works will be listed in the catalogue.

Information system
A complete system designed for the collection, organization, storage, retrieval, and dissemination of information.

Inverted file
A system-created computer file that acts as an index to selected items of information in the database. It contains information about the location of the information (record number and field tag), and thus facilitates information retrieval in the same way as the index of a book leads the user to desired information. (The alternative to inverted file searching is “free-text searching” in which the system scans each record in the database to find the desired information.)

Item
A document, set of documents, or part of a document, in any physical form, treated as an entity and as such forming the basis for a single bibliographic description.
ANNEX 15: GLOSSARY

Language of analysis
The language of the system chosen for recording information such as the notes, the descriptors, and the abstract. In a unilingual system, the language of analysis is the language of the system. In a multilingual system, the language of analysis is one of the languages of the system.

Level
See Bibliographic level.

Monograph
An item complete in one physical volume.

Monographic level
See Bibliographic level

Monographic series
A group of separate monographs issued in succession by the same publisher and in uniform style, intended to be continued indefinitely, and related to one another by the fact that each one bears, in addition to its own title, a common title applying to the group as a whole.

Narrower term (NT)
In a hierarchical arrangement of concepts, a concept that is more specific than the concept above it. For example, the term “apples” is a narrower term of the term “fruit”.

Parallel title
Another language version of the title, found on the title page or title page substitute.

Patronymic
A name derived from the given name of the father, often by the addition of a suffix.

Periodical
A serial issued at regular intervals, more frequently than annually, each issue of which contains articles by more than one contributor.

Repeatable field
A field that may occur more than once in a given computer record. For example, the author field is repeatable to allow each author to feature as a heading in a catalogue or index.

Serial
A publication issued in successive parts, at intervals, bearing numerical or chronological designations, and intended to be continued indefinitely. Serials include periodicals, newspapers, newsletters, annuals, and monographic series.

Serial level
See Bibliographic level

Series
See Monographic series

Subfield
Part of a subfielded field.
Subfielded field
A field that is divided into separate parts, or subfields, each of which is reserved for a particular element of the information entered in the field. For example, in the publisher field, the place of publication and the publisher name are entered in separate subfields.

Subordinate body
A corporate body that forms an integral part of a larger body, in relation to which it holds an inferior hierarchical rank.
ANNEX 16: BIBLIOGRAPHY


36. *Yearbook of International Organizations.* Brussels, Union of International Associations. (annual publication)
CONTENTS

Example 1. Monograph

Example 2. Monograph (conference proceedings). The system uses corporate name authority records

Example 3. Monograph in a monographic series

Example 4. Chapter from a monograph

Example 5. Collection

Example 6. Chapter from a collection

Example 7. Monograph from a collection

Example 8. Article from a periodical
**Example 1**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date record entered</td>
<td>1994-04-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bib level</td>
<td>007 008 M</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country of origin</td>
<td>DE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record nos. of: Parent</td>
<td>011 Parts 012 Other lang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language(s) of: Analysis</td>
<td>020 Analysis En 021 Text En 022 Summaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translated title</td>
<td>2/3/4/5  E/F/S/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td><em>aCrowley, D.</em>^aEtherington, A.*^aKidd, R.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>*aBonn^bFriedrich-Ebert-Stiftung, Mass Media Dept.^cDE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — free form</td>
<td>1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — ISO form</td>
<td>1981-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td>*a186 p.^bill.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono series</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>CAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
<td>371.33 C7 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td>13277%13278</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>MONO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>OD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date record entered</td>
<td>1994-04-08</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bib level:</td>
<td>007 008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country of origin</td>
<td>FR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record nos. of:</td>
<td>Parent Parts 10 Other lang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language(s) of:</td>
<td>Analysis En Text En Summaries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td>^aRose, Tore^bed.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td>^z12^eSponsor%^z23^eSponsor%^z43^eSponsor</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
<td>^aConference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa^bParis^cFR^d14-16 Nov 1984^e1984-11-14</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>^aParis^bOECD^cFR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — free form</td>
<td>1985</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — ISO form</td>
<td>1985-00-00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td>^a335 p.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono series</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN(s)</td>
<td>92-64-12749-6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Availability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Title of serial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
<td>&lt;ECONOMIC RECESSION&gt;&lt;ECONOMIC POLICY&gt;&lt;INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
<td>&lt;ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT&gt;&lt;SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT&gt; &lt;CONFERENCE REPORTS&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
<td>&lt;AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Broad subject</td>
<td>Development - general</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>LIST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Call no</td>
<td>330.1(6) ROS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>No of copies</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td>13270</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>MONO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>ZY%BA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>1994-04-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bib level</td>
<td>007 S</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Country of origin</td>
<td>US</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record nos. of:</td>
<td>Parent: 011 Parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language(s) of:</td>
<td>Analysis: 020 Text En, 021 Text En, 022 Summaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Case studies in population policy: Nigeria</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translated title</td>
<td>2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td>^aUN^bPopulation Division^cNew York, NY^dUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other assoc insti(t)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td>^aNew York, NY^bUN^cUS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — free form</td>
<td>1988</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — ISO form</td>
<td>1988-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td>^a38 p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono series</td>
<td>^aPopulation policy paper^bno. 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----</td>
<td>---------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1994-04-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record nos. of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Language(s) of:</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis En</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-</td>
<td>Translated title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>@3/4/5 E/F/S/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date — free form</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Mono series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Femmes du Cameroun : mères pacifiques, femmes rebelles</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^aBarbier, J.C.^bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;PURCHASING&gt;&lt;MARKETING&gt;&lt;WOMEN'S ROLE&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;FOOD&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>&lt;CAMEROON&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED ☐</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Trade</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>396 BAR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>13279</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>PART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>JK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered 1994-04-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>006</td>
<td>Bib level: 007 008 C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Country of origin CH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record nos. of: Parent 011 Parts 29 012 Other lang</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Language(s) of: Analysis En 021 Text En 022 Summaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title Rural development and women: lessons from the field</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-</td>
<td>Translated title 2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s) AaMuntemba, S. bed.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) AaILOcGeneva dCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher AaGeneva bILO cCH</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date — free form 1985</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date — ISO form 1985-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C) a2 v</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Mono series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field ID</th>
<th>Field Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent</td>
<td>(M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td>parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td>parent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field ID</th>
<th>Field Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
<td>&lt;WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION&gt;&lt;RURAL EMPLOYMENT&gt;&lt;AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
<td>&lt;MARKETING&gt;&lt;CREDIT&gt;&lt;WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS&gt;&lt;CASE STUDIES&gt;&lt;PROJECT EVALUATION&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td>CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
<td>Labour</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

## LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field ID</th>
<th>Field Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>CAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
<td>396 MUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td>13280</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>MONO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>JK.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Field</td>
<td>Value</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1994-04-08</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>Bib level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>008 A</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Country of origin</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record nos. of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Parent 28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Parts</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Other lang</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Language(s) of:</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Analysis En</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>Text En</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Summaries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Savings clubs: the mobilisation of rural finances in Zimbabwe</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-</td>
<td>Translated title</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^aChimedza, R.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^aUniversity of Zimbabwe^bDepartment of Land Management^cHarare^dZW</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^aGeneva^bILO^cCH</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date — free form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1985</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date — ISO form</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>1985-00-00</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>^av. 1^bp. 161-174</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Mono series</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### ISBN(s)
- 92-2-105152-8

### Fields Describing Parent Item

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Title of parent (M/C):** Rural development and women: lessons from the field

**Personal author(s) — parent:** aMuntemba, S. Abed.

### Subject Analysis Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Primary descriptors:** <CREDIT COOPERATIVES><SAVINGS><WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION>

**Secondary descriptors:** <CASE STUDIES>

**Geographic descriptors:** <ZIMBABWE>

**Abstract:**
- CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED [ ]
- Finance

### Local Processing Fields

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>CAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>MF111%MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
<td>396 MUN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td>13281</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>PART</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>JK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Example 7**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered 1994-04-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>Bib level: M C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>009</td>
<td>Country of origin CA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record nos. of: Parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>011</td>
<td>Parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>012</td>
<td>Other lang 24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>020</td>
<td>Language(s) of: Analysis En</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>Text En</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>022</td>
<td>Summaries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>102</td>
<td>Translated title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>103-105</td>
<td>2/3/4/5 E/F/S/o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s) Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) International Development Research Centre (Information Sciences Division) Ottawa, ON CA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s) Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies Ottawa, ON CA 3-7 Nov 1981; Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA 9-13 Nov 1981</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher渥京, ON IDRC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date — free form 1982</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date — ISO form 1982-00-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C) a272 p.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part av. 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>Mono series</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>Project(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Recommended methods for development-information systems</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) - parent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) - parent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>&lt;MANUALS&gt;&lt;CATALOGUING&gt;&lt;INFORMATION ANALYSIS&gt;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>&lt;DEVISIS&gt;&lt;INDEXING&gt;&lt;CONTENT ANALYSIS&gt;&lt;AGRIS&gt;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>&lt;METHODOLOGY&gt;&lt;ISIS&gt;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>&lt;MINISIS&gt;</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED ✅</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><em>Information systems</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>LIST</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>REF%MAIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
<td>025.315 MOR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td>13265%13266</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>MONO</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>CD</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This publication contains guidelines for the record structure and content of bibliographic records in development-information systems. It is intended to be a guide for the designers of new systems and for those seeking to improve existing systems. The manual is the result of 5-6 years experience with a variety of regional and national DEVSIS (Development Sciences Information System) systems and can be considered to be an update of the technical recommendations of the DEVSIS Study Team in 1975. The major part of the manual contains field-by-field guidelines to be used by a documentalist when creating records in a development-information system. Numerous annexes are appended, including a data-definition table, sample completed worksheets, a correspondence for UNISIST and AGRIS field tags, guidelines for implementation under MINISIS, CDS/ISIS and DOS/ISIS, a glossary, and a bibliography.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Date</td>
<td>1994-04-08</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record nos. of: Parent</td>
<td>011 Parts</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Language(s) of: Analysis</td>
<td>020 En</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title</td>
<td>Low-cost tubewells for developing countries</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td>^aMal, B.C.%^aMishra, A.P.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td>^aRajendra Agricultural University^bCollege of Agricultural Engineering^cSamastipur^dIN</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other assoc instit(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Edition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — free form</td>
<td>Sep 1986</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Date — ISO form</td>
<td>1986-09-00</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Part</td>
<td>^av. 4, no. 3^bp. 197-203</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mono series</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Project(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**INPUT SHEET**  

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>160</th>
<th>ISBN(s)</th>
<th>161</th>
<th>Doc no(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>162</td>
<td>Availability</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**FIELDS DESCRIBING PARENT ITEM**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>200</th>
<th>Title of serial</th>
<th>International journal for development technology</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td>0263-418X</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**SUBJECT ANALYSIS FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>300</th>
<th>Primary descriptors</th>
<th>&lt;IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT&gt;&lt;PUMPS&gt;&lt;GROUNDWATER&gt;&lt;APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY&gt;</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
<td>&lt;BAMBOO&gt;&lt;COST ANALYSIS&gt;</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
| 310 | Abstract | CHECK BOX IF ATTACHED  

| 320 | Broad subject | Water |

**LOCAL PROCESSING FIELDS**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>400</th>
<th>Processing status</th>
<th>CAT</th>
<th>410</th>
<th>Location(s)</th>
<th>MF176</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call no</td>
<td></td>
<td>412</td>
<td>No of copies</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession no(s)</td>
<td>13282</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>PER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td>JK</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
This annex provides guidance to the practical procedures for data exchange in a formal information network, using MICRO-ISIS.

Information networks are discussed in the Introduction, Section 9. In a formal network, participants send the records they have created to a coordinating centre on a diskette. The coordinating centre merges the records into a common database and disseminates the information in various forms.

The recommended procedures for data exchange are:

1) For each new item that is to be submitted to the coordinating centre (CC), the participating centre (PC) enters the code N in field 003 — Record status.
   This is done at the time the item is being catalogued.

2) At regular intervals (weekly, fortnightly, or monthly, depending on the rate of growth of the PC’s database), a search is carried out to identify the records for all items that have been flagged for input to the centralized database (i.e., those that have N in field 003). These records are saved in a “save” file.

3) To transfer the records to the CC, the PC uses the data export option of the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility. The “save” file (created in step 2) is used as input. At the same time, the following fields are created in the reformatting FST:
   
   001 Participating centre acronym, containing the acronym of the participating centre
   002 Participating centre record number, containing the MFN of the record

   If the network is multilingual, and if the PC has a unilingual information system, field 020 — Language of analysis will also be created at this time, containing the code for the language of the system.

4) If the PC is using computerized authority records, the subfield containing the authority code (i.e., the MFN of the authority record) should be replaced by the appropriate data from the authority record, through the reformatting FST.

5) The other fields remain the same. There is no need to transfer acquisitions fields.

6) The PC changes the record status code in field 003 from N to S, to identify those records that have been sent to the CC. A program to carry out this change automatically is included on the diskette. It is called CHANGE.

7) Using the data import option of the MICRO-ISIS data exchange facility, the CC enters the PC’s new records into the centralized database, where they are automatically assigned new record numbers (MFNs). The CC must supply the first available MFN, and specify M for merge in the import menu. The PC’s MFN is retained in field 002.

8) Note that the MFNs entered in fields 010, 011, and 012 (record numbers of parent, parts, and other language versions) are the MFNs of those records in the PC database. Refer to Annex 19, Section VII — Exchanging data in a formal information network for information on how these record numbers can be automatically translated at the CC into the new MFNs assigned by MICRO-ISIS.

9) The PC should notify the CC in writing of records to be changed or deleted.

The reformatting FST to be used by the PC for exporting data to the CC has been included on the diskette. It is called XCHANG.FST.
This annex describes the MICRO-ISIS implementation of the bibliographic database located on the diskette enclosed with this manual. Information is provided here on the sample database, the associated data entry worksheets and reports, and the procedures required to install and use the database effectively. It is assumed in this annex that users are familiar with MICRO-ISIS and its terminology.

CONTENTS

I OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE
II INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER
III THE SAMPLE APPLICATION
IV DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION
   1. Worksheets for bibliographic records
   2. Worksheets for authority records
V DISPLAY FORMATS
   1. Display formats for bibliographic records (MIBIS)
   2. Display formats for acquisitions records (MIBIS)
   3. Display formats for authority records (MIBIS)
   4. Display format for data verification (MIBIS)
   5. Display formats supplied with other databases
   6. CDS-PASCAL format exits
   7. Changing the display formats to improve performance
VI REPORT GENERATION
   1. Printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin
   2. Resequencing the data for printed bibliographic indexes
   3. Generating the printed bibliographic indexes
   4. Printing the Corporate Name Authority File
   5. Printing the Serials Authority File
   6. Printing the supplier authority file
   7. Printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders
VII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK
   1. Preparing the reformatting FST
   2. Sending data to the coordinating centre
VIII CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS
IX INVERSION
X LIMITATION OF CDS-PASCAL
XI HEURISKO
XII COMPLETE LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE MICRO-ISIS IMPLEMENTATION
   1. Directory structure
   2. Directory contents
XIII SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

I  OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE

The enclosed diskette contains a sample database called MIBIS, consisting of records that demonstrate most of the features described in this manual. The diskette is organized into eight directories:

- directory MIBIS, which contains the MIBIS database described in this manual, and supporting MICRO-ISIS files (display formats, data entry worksheets, etc.).
- directory MIBIS2, which contains the MIBIS2 database. MIBIS2 is derived from the MIBIS database by sequencing bibliographic records by Broad subject heading (field 320). The printed bibliographic indexes described in this annex are produced from the MIBIS2 database.
- directory CORP, which contains the CORP database that is used to produce the printed list of the Corporate Name Authority File (CNAF).
- directory SERIAL, which contains the SERIAL database which is used to produce the printed list of the Serials Authority File (SAF).
- directory ISISPAS, which contains programs and format exits written in the CDS/ISIS PASCAL language. These are used to perform many of the operations described in this annex. (CDS/ISIS PASCAL is referred to as CDS-PASCAL throughout the annex.)
- directory SAVE, which contains the save files for the retrievals described in this annex.
- directory SAFE, which contains variations of some of the display formats and sort worksheets. These can be used as alternatives in situations in which the display formats found in directories MIBIS and MIBIS2 may cause unpredictable results. Refer to Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL.
- directory INMAGIC, which contains a less complete implementation of the same sample database using INMAGIC Plus software. This is described in Annex 20.

The MICRO-ISIS implementation is based on Mini-Micro CDS/ISIS, Version 3.07, dated 24 November 1993. Not all the features used will work on earlier versions (e.g., Version 2.3 or Version 3.0).

There is a file called READ.ME in the root directory of the diskette enclosed with this manual. It may contain last-minute notes about the sample implementation

II  INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER

To use the sample application, you must do the following:

- Create separate directories on your hard disk for each of the databases (MIBIS, MIBIS2, CORP, and SERIAL).
- Create the appropriate database parameter files (MIBIS.PAR, MIBIS2.PAR, CORP.PAR, and SERIAL.PAR) to enable MICRO-ISIS to access the databases and their definitions. To use the predefined worksheets to produce printed catalogues and bibliographic indexes, and to use the programs written in CDS-PASCAL, you must keep the databases in separate directories, and you should not rename any of the databases.
- Copy the files from the diskette, using the XCOPY DOS command, to the appropriate directories on your hard disk. If your version of DOS does not have this command, use COPY.
- If one does not already exist, create a directory on your hard disk to hold the CDS-PASCAL programs and format exits. You may, alternatively, choose to keep CDS-PASCAL programs with the ISIS.EXE program.
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

- If you created a directory for CDS-PASCAL programs, ensure that this directory is properly referenced by the CDS-PASCAL program path parameter (parameter 1) in the system parameter file (SYSPAR.PAR).
- Copy the CDS-PASCAL programs from the ISISPAS directory on the diskette to the directory you created on the hard disk for CDS-PASCAL programs. If you did not create a directory on your hard disk, copy these files to the directory containing ISIS.EXE.
- Copy the save files from the SAVE directory to the directory where MICRO-ISIS keeps its work files. This may be a separate directory set up for this purpose (indicated by parameter 4 in the system parameter file), or the directory in which ISIS.EXE resides.

There are references throughout the remainder of this annex to optional changes to be made to the display formats, inversion and reformatting field select tables (FSTs), data entry worksheets, and a program. The applicability of the changes is determined by whether you are part of a formal information network, the language(s) of the system, and the use of computerized authority files. It is also expected that you may not require all the fields, or may wish to modify the sample implementation in other ways to suit your particular needs.

With two exceptions, you need not make any of the changes suggested. The sample implementation has been constructed in such a way as to function correctly regardless of the options you choose to use. One exception applies for the exchange of data in a formal information network. In this situation, you must make the indicated changes to the reformatting FST (see Section VII: Exchanging data in a formal information network). The other exception applies to the printing of purchase orders and claims for overdue orders. Before running these reports, you must make the indicated changes to the program that prints them (see Section VI, part 7).

III THE SAMPLE APPLICATION

Although four databases are defined, you will only work directly with one: MIBIS. All bibliographic and authority records are maintained in this database. The other databases are used only occasionally to produce printed bibliographic indexes and authority files. When they are required, special CDS-PASCAL programs copy the necessary data from MIBIS to the appropriate database.

As well as bibliographic records, the MIBIS sample database contains corporate name, serials, and supplier authority records. MICRO-ISIS requires that computerized authority records, if used, reside with the bibliographic records in one database.

The sample application contains some bibliographic records that use authority files, and others that do not. The sample database, therefore, demonstrates both approaches to the handling of bibliographic information. In practice, you will most probably use one approach consistently. For example, you may choose to use only a computerized Corporate Name Authority File (CNAF), but not a computerized Serials Authority File (SAF), nor a computerized supplier authority file. If so, all bibliographic records containing corporate names would use the CNAF. All serials titles, ISSNs, and supplier information would be entered directly into the bibliographic records.

Example of how both approaches are used in the sample database

MFN 13 The corporate author (field 111) contains the institution’s main body, place, and country code, entered in subfields a, c, and d:
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

MFN 17 The two corporate authors are entered using the authority codes 21 and 40, entered in subfield z:

\[ z21%z40 \]

The display formats and FSTs used for inversion, sorting, and the exchange of data have been generalized to accept data directly from a bibliographic record or indirectly using an authority record, as the case may be. As well, these tables have been designed to work for both the participating centre and the coordinating centre when used in a network. As can be seen in the following list, records of different types are mixed throughout the database.

The MIBIS database contains the following 52 records:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MFN</th>
<th>Record Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>Monograph from a collection (English-language version)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Article from a periodical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>Monograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>Monograph (conference proceedings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>Chapter from a monograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>Monograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>Supplier authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>Monograph with translated title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17</td>
<td>Collection with parallel title (conference proceedings)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>21</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>22</td>
<td>Serials authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>23</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24</td>
<td>Monograph from a collection (French-language version)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>25</td>
<td>Monograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>26</td>
<td>Serials authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>27</td>
<td>Chapter from a monograph</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>28</td>
<td>Collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>29</td>
<td>Chapter from a collection</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>Article from a periodical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>31</td>
<td>Monograph with parallel title</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>33</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>34</td>
<td>Corporate name authority record</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>35</td>
<td>Serials authority record</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
IV DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION

1 Worksheets for bibliographic records

Four data entry worksheets have been defined for the entry or modification of bibliographic records. They are:

MIBIS

This is the default data entry worksheet. It is used to enter or modify a record describing a monograph or collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level M or C).

PARTM

This data entry worksheet is used to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a monograph or a collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level A, and bibliographic level of parent M or C).

PARTS

This data entry worksheet is used to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a serial (i.e., a record with bibliographic level A and bibliographic level of parent S).

ACQIS

This data entry worksheet is used to enter or modify an acquisitions record, regardless of its bibliographic level.

The first three data entry worksheets each consist of seven screens. The structure of each worksheet is identical, but only those fields appropriate to the material being described are present. The fields are clearly identified with the field names and field tags used in the Field-by-Field Guide. Except for the most obvious fields, help information is also provided, which can be viewed by pressing the [F1] function key. Some fields are defined with default values that are always appropriate for the material being described. In particular, the Record type (field 999) is set to “B” in all of the above worksheets to indicate bibliographic records.
Note 1 If you are not part of a formal information network, you can remove the Record status (field 003) from the first screen page of each of the MIBIS, PARTM, and PARTS worksheets.

Note 2 If you are implementing a unilingual system, you can remove the Language of analysis (field 020) from each of the MIBIS, PARTM, and PARTS worksheets. If, however, you will also be exporting records to a multilingual system, you must also create an entry for the Language of analysis (field 020) in the reformatting FST used in the MICRO-ISIS exchange facility (see Section VII: Exchanging data in a formal information network).

2 Worksheets for authority records

There are three data entry worksheets for the entry or modification of authority records. They are:

CORP used to enter or modify corporate name authority records.

SER used to enter or modify serials authority records.

SUPPL used to enter or modify supplier authority records.

These data entry worksheets all consist of a single screen, and all have the Record type (field 999) set to the appropriate code ("C", "S", or "X") by default.

Examples of how to use the data entry worksheets

Example 1

A monograph is ordered, received, and catalogued by your centre:

When ordering the item, use ACQIS to enter the basic bibliographic and acquisitions information for the monograph.

If you are using a computerized supplier authority file and an authority record for the supplier is not already present in the database, use SUPPL to enter a new record.

If applicable, use CORP to enter new corporate name authority records.

When the item is received, use ACQIS to update Processing status (field 400), Date received (field 512), and other information as appropriate.

Use MIBIS to complete the descriptive cataloguing and add the call number, descriptors, abstract, etc.

If you are using a computerized CNAF and authority records for the corporate names are not already present in the database, use CORP to enter new records.

Example 2

Your centre has a copy of a conference proceedings that has already been catalogued as a monograph. You now wish to add records describing individual papers of particular interest to your centre:

Use PARTM to enter a bibliographic record for each paper to be described.
If you are using a computerized CNAF and authority records for the corporate names are not already present in the database, use CORP to enter new records.

Use MIBIS to update the record for the conference proceedings (i.e., the parent record) to add the appropriate MFNs in Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011).

V DISPLAY FORMATS

The display formats provided on the diskette are in English. If your system uses another language, the literals in the display formats will need to be changed. Similarly, in a multilingual system, you may elect to either provide extra display formats in the other languages of your system, or to modify the supplied display formats to use multilingual literals.

1 Display formats for bibliographic records (MIBIS)

Three similar display formats are provided with MIBIS for the bibliographic records:

- **MIBIS** is the default format used for screen displays when searching or browsing the database. It is also used for all printed catalogues.
- **MIBISA** is identical to MIBIS, but also displays the abstract. It can be selected as an alternative to MIBIS when searching or browsing. This display format is not used in any of the printed outputs.
- **CAB** is used to produce the current awareness bulletin. It is similar to MIBISA, but does not display the Record number of parent (field 010), Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011), or Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012). Indentation of data is reduced to accommodate a two-column report.

The above three display formats are used with bibliographic records. When browsing sequentially through MIBIS, you will encounter pauses as the system skips over the authority records in the database.

2 Display formats for acquisitions records (MIBIS)

Four display formats are provided for acquisitions records. They are all used exclusively by program ORDER:

- **ORDER** is used to print purchase orders.
- **CLAIM** is used to print claims for overdue orders.
- **SUPPLR** is used to print the supplier name and address in purchase orders and claims for overdue orders.
- **SUPNAM** is used to determine when a new supplier is being referenced.

3 Display formats for authority records (MIBIS)

Authority records can be displayed using the following three display formats:

- **CORP** for CNAF records,
- **SERIAL** for SAF records, and
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

- SUPPL for supplier authority file records.

Only the appropriate authority records are displayed by the above three display formats. You will encounter pauses when browsing MIBIS while other types of records are skipped.

As well, a printed list of the supplier authority file can be produced. The predefined report SUPAF calls the display format by the same name, SUPAF.

4 Display format for data verification (MIBIS)

For proofreading purposes, all records in the database can be displayed using the format TAGS. The data are printed with the field tags, regardless of record type. The format is similar to the empty format provided by MICRO-ISIS for screen output. TAGS can be used to print data in proof format in a report.

5 Display formats supplied with other databases

Three other display formats are provided for use with the other three databases (MIBIS2, CORP, and SERIAL). They are only used with specific reports that require the data to be reformatted, using these databases, before the reports can be produced. The formats are:

- MIBIS2, which is used with the MIBIS2 database to produce the printed main bibliographic index (see example 6 in Section XIII);
- CORP, which is used with the CORP database to produce the printed list of the CNAF (see example 14); and
- SERIAL, which is used with the SERIAL database to produce the printed list of the SAF (see example 15).

6 CDS-PASCAL format exits

MICRO-ISIS supports the use of format exits written in CDS-PASCAL for use in display formats. These are user-written programs that facilitate custom formatting of data before it is displayed or printed. The sample implementation uses the following format exits:

- BODY, to provide punctuation for corporate names,
- DEC, to determine the number of decimal digits to print in the total price, when printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders,
- LINE, to remove the second of two adjacent periods, and
- REF, for use with renumbered records to eliminate references to other records that are not present in the renumbered database. Nonexistent references can occur when:
  - not all related records are selected for use with the main bibliographic index or the other index reports,
  - in a formal information network, not all related bibliographic records are sent to the coordinating centre.

More information is provided on references to related bibliographic records in Record number of parent (field 010), Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011), and Record
number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012) in Section VI, Part 2 — Resequencing the database for the printed bibliographic indexes, Section VII — Exchanging data in a formal information network, and Section IX — Inversion.

Note Refer to Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL if you expect that any occurrence of the following fields may sometimes contain more than 255 characters:

- 111 Corporate author(s)
- 112 Affiliation
- 113 Other associated institution(s)
- 211 Corporate author(s) — parent
- 901 Corporate body (CNAF records)

7 Changing the display formats to improve performance

A number of simplifications may be made to the display formats if you are not using all the features described in this manual (e.g., computerized authority files).

The changes described below will result in faster production of displays and reports. However, they are optional and need not be made. Without these changes, the displays and reports will simply take a bit longer to produce.

7.1 Systems not using a computerized CNAF

If you are not using a computerized CNAF, you can simplify the MIBIS, MIBISA, and CAB display formats by removing any references to them. For example, in format MIBIS, Corporate author(s) (field 111) are handled with:

\[
\text{if } p(v111) \text{ then } \&\text{body}( '/ ', \text{if } p(v111^z) \text{ then ref(val(v111^z), v901) else v111 fi, ' '})(3,3) fi)
\]

This can be replaced with:

\[
\text{if } p(v111) \text{ then } \&\text{body}( '/ ', v111, ' ')(3,3) fi)
\]

Similar changes could be made to the handling of the Affiliation (field 112), Other associated institutions (field 113), and Corporate author(s) — parent (field 211) in MIBIS, MIBISA, and CAB.

7.2 Systems not using a computerized SAF

If you are not using a computerized SAF, similar changes could be made to the handling of the Monographic series (field 140), Title of serial (field 200), and ISSN (field 201) in MIBIS, MIBISA, and CAB.

7.3 Systems not using a computerized supplier authority file

Likewise, the handling of Supplier (field 515) can be simplified in ORDER, CLAIM, SUPPLR and SUPNAM, and in the sort worksheet SUPLS if you are not using a computerized supplier authority file.
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

7.4 Systems not participating in a formal information network

If you are not implementing the system as part of a network, you could simplify the handling of Record number of parent (field 010), Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012) in formats MIBIS and MIBISA.

Replace:

"Parent record: "d010,if v010:'-' then f(l(v010),1,0) else v010 fi/, if p(v011) then &ref('See also record number(s) ',(if v011:'-' then f(l(v011),1,0)', 'else v011', | fi), '* for part(s).')(0,3)/fi, if p(v012) then &ref('For other language version(s) see record no(s): ', (if v012:'-' then f(l(v012),1,0)', 'else v012', | fi), '*.')(0,3)/fi

with:

"Parent record: "v010/, "See also record number(s) "v011(0,3)+|", |" for part(s)."/.
"For other language version(s) see record no(s): " v012(0,3)+|", |"."/

VI REPORT GENERATION

A number of reports have been predefined (see Section XIII: Sample printed outputs which uses these reports with the sample database).

The following reports are provided:

- **printed catalogues**, which are produced directly from the main sample database, MIBIS;

- **current awareness bulletin**, also produced directly from MIBIS;

- **main bibliographic index**, produced from the MIBIS2 database (MIBIS2 is a temporary database created using selected records from MIBIS, which are resequenced by Broad subject heading (field 320), and then renumbered);

- **other indexes** that refer to the main bibliographic index, also produced from MIBIS2;

- **purchase orders and claims** for overdue orders, produced from MIBIS;

- **printed lists of the CNAF and the SAF**, produced from databases CORP and SERIAL respectively. These reports are derived from the authority records in MIBIS, but processed by CDS-PASCAL programs into records in temporary databases. This permits the interfiling of "See" references in the lists; and

- **printed list of the supplier authority file**, produced directly from MIBIS.

All predefined reports send data to the printer (DOS filename PRN). If necessary, a report can be cancelled by pressing [Ctrl-C].

Should you wish to change any of the predefined reports permanently, you will have to do the following:
Annex 19: Implementation using MICRO-ISIS with Sample Printed Outputs

- Using DOS, copy the print or sort worksheet to be modified from the directory of the database from which the report is produced (MIBIS, MIBIS2, CORP, or SERIAL) to the same directory in which you keep the MICRO-ISIS system worksheets (i.e., the directory containing AEYPRT.FMT and AEYSRT.FMT). Rename the worksheet at the same time so that the third character in the name is a “Y” (e.g., the title catalogue report, called TITLC, might be renamed from ATITLC.FMT to AEYTLC.FMT).
- Make the desired changes using the System utility services of MICRO-ISIS.
- Optionally, test the changed report, referring to it by its new name.
- Reverse the first operation, copying the changed menu from the directory containing the system worksheets to the appropriate database directory. Give the new copy the original name of the print or sort worksheet.
- Delete the copy you created in the first step.

A CDS-PASCAL program called REPORT is provided to produce the above reports except the three authority file lists. This program will ensure that the appropriate database is selected for the desired report. Similarly, CDS-PASCAL programs CORP and SERIAL can be used to produce the printed lists of the CNAF and the SAF. Finally, program RENUMB can be requested to resequence the records in MIBIS for use with the printed bibliographic indexes. The following sections provide more information on the reports and the programs that produce them.

1 Printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin

1.1 Selecting the data to be printed

Because the sample database is small, the printed catalogues and the current awareness bulletin were both printed using all records that had a Processing status (field 400) of LIST or CAT. Normally, you would only select records with the processing status LIST for the current awareness bulletin.

The records to be printed are first selected using the Information retrieval services of MICRO-ISIS. Following is a sample search expression:

   LIST/(400)

The selected records are then saved in a MICRO-ISIS save file called CAT for the printed catalogues, and CAB for the current awareness bulletin. The predefined reports use these save files. Files CAT.SAV and CAB.SAV are included on the diskette for the records selected for the sample outputs at the end of this annex (see examples 1 to 5).

1.2 Using program REPORT to print the reports

You may call the CDS-PASCAL program REPORT to produce the printed catalogues or the current awareness bulletin. Proceed as follows:

- select option A (Advanced programming services) from the main MICRO-ISIS menu,
- select R (run), then
- type the program name REPORT and press [Enter].

The program is menu driven — select the report you wish to have printed, or enter X to exit from the program and return to the main MICRO-ISIS menu. If you request a specific report,
you will be asked for the search criterion to be used. You need not provide one, provided that you have already done a search, and saved the results under the name CAT or CAB, as appropriate. If you use the program, you need not concern yourself with which database to use. The program ensures that the MIBIS database is selected before displaying the main MICRO-ISIS menu.

1.3 Using Sorting and printing services to print the reports

As an alternative to using program REPORT, you can use any of the predefined reports directly by requesting them with option S (User print worksheet) of the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS. This also makes it possible to provide one-time overrides to the report worksheets.

The worksheets used to produce the printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print worksheet</th>
<th>Sort worksheet</th>
<th>Print format</th>
<th>Save file</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author catalogue</td>
<td>AUTHC</td>
<td>AUTHS</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title catalogue</td>
<td>TITLC</td>
<td>TITLS</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author catalogue</td>
<td>CORPC</td>
<td>CORPS</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting catalogue</td>
<td>MEETC</td>
<td>MEETS</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current awareness bulletin</td>
<td>CAB</td>
<td>CABS</td>
<td>CAB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The following table defines the sort parameters used with the printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sort worksheet</th>
<th>First-level sort fields</th>
<th>Sort type</th>
<th>Second-level sort field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AUTHS</td>
<td>110^a</td>
<td>0^38</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLS</td>
<td>100, 101</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORPS</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MEETCS</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CABS</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

All the catalogue reports print the highest level sort as a heading. Note that, in the title catalogue, the title is printed as a heading, and then is printed again at the start of the item description. This is required because a title catalogue contains entries under both Title (field 100) and Parallel title(s) (field 101).

Note Refer to Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL if you expect that any occurrence of either of the following fields will sometimes contain more than 255 characters:

111 Corporate author(s)
901 Corporate body (CNAF records)

^38 Sort type 0 sorts the data by the complete field.
2 Resequecing the data for printed bibliographic indexes

The bibliographic records to be used in the printed bibliographic indexes must first be sorted by Broad subject heading (field 320) and within that by Title (field 100). They are then printed with new reference numbers assigned sequentially to them. MICRO-ISIS has no direct means of renumbering records after they have been sorted. To produce the desired printed bibliographic indexes, the records must be placed into a second database after they have been sorted. The MFN numbers of the records in this second database, called MIBIS2, are then used as the sequential numbers assigned to the material in the main bibliographic index, and referenced in the other printed bibliographic indexes (see examples 6 to 11).

2.1 Using program RENUMB to resequence the data

A program, called RENUMB, has been provided that will perform the necessary selection, sorting, and transfer of records from MIBIS to MIBIS2. Using program RENUMB is the most convenient way to prepare the data for use with the printed bibliographic indexes.

The program asks two questions:

- First, what is the search criterion to identify the records in MIBIS to be resequenced for the main bibliographic index and other bibliographic indexes.
- Second, what is the number to be assigned to the first resequenced record — this becomes the first MFN number used in MIBIS2.

The program then performs all the steps required to build the resequenced database. When it is finished, it calls program REPORT, which allows you to select the reports you wish to have printed.

The diskette contains the database, MIBIS2, which is derived from MIBIS in this manner. The records included are those which meet the search criterion:

LIST/(400)

The sample records are renumbered starting with 5001.

2.2 Manually resequencing the data

As an alternative to using program RENUMB, you can perform the steps done by program RENUMB. They are:

- Using the MIBIS database, select the records to be used in the printed bibliographic indexes.
- Save the selected records in a MICRO-ISIS save file called PRINT. The predefined report to sort the records uses this save file. A file PRINT.SAV is included on the diskette for the records selected for the sample printed bibliographic indexes (see examples 6 to 11).
- Sort the data using the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS. Select the predefined report worksheet NUMBR which requests the sort (using worksheet NMBRS) but does not print anything. MICRO-ISIS keeps the “hit” file from the sort.
- Export the data using the Master file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option E (Export CDS/ISIS file). Fill in the fields on the export menu as follows:
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

Save file name: leave empty
Hit file (Y/N)?: Y
Reformatting FST: RENUMB
Renumber records from: leave empty

Reformatting FSTs are used by MICRO-ISIS to reformat the data when it is being exchanged between databases. The reformatting FST, RENUMB, copies only the fields needed to produce the printed bibliographic indexes, and performs all the necessary retrieval of information from authority file records. The original MFN is also kept, which is required to enable references to other MFNs in fields 010, 011, and 012 to be renumbered later.

- On the main MICRO-ISIS menu, change the active database to MIBIS2.
- Import the data using the Master file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option I (Import external file). Fill in the fields on the import menu as follows:

  First MFN to be assigned: provide the number to be assigned to the first record
  Load/Merge/Update: L
  Reformatting FST: leave empty

The parameters listed above will load the resequenced records into the MIBIS2 database, replacing any data loaded previously.
- Invert the complete database using the Inverted file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option F (Full inverted file generation). Only the original MFN is inverted, which is required to properly renumber the references to other records in fields 010, 011, and 012.

The MIBIS2 database can now be used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes.

3 Generating the printed bibliographic indexes

You can produce the main bibliographic index and other printed bibliographic indexes anytime after you have created the resequenced MIBIS2 database. As with the printed catalogues and the current awareness bulletin, you can request these using the supplied program REPORT. Alternatively, you can print any index directly, so long as you ensure that MIBIS2 is the active database. You can request any of the predefined reports by using option “S” (User print worksheet) of the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS. This also makes it possible to provide one-time overrides to the report worksheets. The worksheets used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes available are summarized in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print worksheet</th>
<th>Sort worksheet</th>
<th>Print format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main bibliographic index</td>
<td>MAINI</td>
<td>MAINS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author index</td>
<td>AUTHI</td>
<td>AUTHS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title index</td>
<td>TITLI</td>
<td>TITLS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate body index</td>
<td>CORPI</td>
<td>CORPS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject index</td>
<td>SUBJI</td>
<td>SUBJS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic index</td>
<td>GEOGI</td>
<td>GEOGS</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Notes regarding print formats
1. The format is specified directly in the print worksheet.
2. No format is used; only the sort headings are printed.

The following table defines the sort parameters used with the printed bibliographic indexes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sort worksheet</th>
<th>First-level sort fields</th>
<th>Sort type</th>
<th>Second-level sort field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MAINS</td>
<td>320</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUTHS</td>
<td>110^a</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLS</td>
<td>100, 101</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORPS</td>
<td>111, 112, 113</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUBJS</td>
<td>300</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GEOGS</td>
<td>302</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>100</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: Refer to Section X: Limitation of CDS-PASCAL if you expect that any occurrence of the following fields will sometimes contain more than 255 characters:

111 Corporate author(s)
112 Affiliation
113 Other associated institution(s)
211 Corporate author(s) — parent
901 Corporate body (CNAF records)

4 Printing the Corporate Name Authority File

The production of a printed list of the CNAF (see example 14) requires some extra processing of the authority records. This is to enable the “See” references to be interfiled with the corporate names, while displaying the appropriate reference. This can only be done using CDS-PASCAL programs. Programs called CORP and CORP2 have been provided that will:

- create a database called CORP using the CNAF records in MIBIS, and
- sort and list these records on your printer.

Program CORP will copy the CNAF from MIBIS into the CORP database. It then calls the second program, CORP2, which performs some modifications to this temporary database, and then produces the printed list. You only request program CORP. This program searches for corporate name authority records, and stores the results in a save file called CNAF. It assumes an old one exists, and replaces it (one is supplied on the diskette). If not, the program operation will terminate, and you will be shown the Information retrieval services menu. In that case, simply request program CORP a second time. The program also uses the reformatting FST called CNAF in the MIBIS directory to select the necessary information from the MIBIS database.

To produce the report, the program uses print worksheet CNAF, sort worksheet CNAFS, and display format CORP, all kept in the CORP directory.

39 Sort type 0 sorts the data by the complete field and Sort type 2 sorts descriptors delimited by triangular brackets.
To produce the printed list of the CNAF, proceed as follows:

- select option A (Advanced programming services) from the main menu,
- select R (run), and
- type the program name CORP, and press [Enter].

5 Printing the Serials Authority File

The production of a printed list of the SAF (see example 15) requires some extra processing of the authority records. This is to enable the “See” references to be interfiled with the serial titles, while displaying the appropriate reference. This can only be done using CDS-PASCAL programs. Programs called SERIAL and SER2 have been provided that will:

- create a database called SERIAL using the SAF records in MIBIS, and
- sort and list these records on your printer.

Program SERIAL will copy the SAF records from MIBIS into the SERIAL database. It then calls the second program, SER2, which performs some modifications to this temporary database, and then produces the printed list. You only request program SERIAL. This program searches for serials authority records, and stores the results in a save file called SAF. It assumes an old one exists, and replaces it (one is supplied on the diskette). If not, the program operation will terminate, and you will be shown the Information retrieval services menu. In that case, simply request program SERIAL a second time. The program also uses the reformatting FST called SAF in the MIBIS directory to select the necessary information from the MIBIS database.

To produce the report, the program uses print worksheet SAF, sort worksheet SAFS, and display format SERIAL, all kept in the SERIAL directory.

To produce the printed list of the SAF, proceed as follows:

- select option A (Advanced programming services) from the main menu,
- select R (run), and
- type the program name SERIAL, and press [Enter].

6 Printing the supplier authority file

The supplier authority file is the only authority file that can be printed directly from the MIBIS database (see example 16). The MIBIS directory on the diskette contains print worksheet SUPAF, sort worksheet SUPS, and display format SUPAF for the printed list. To produce the list of the supplier authority file, proceed as follows:

- select option P (Sorting and printing services) from the main menu,
- select S (User print worksheet),
- type the print worksheet name SUPAF, and press [Enter], and
- if desired, modify any of the fields on the print or sort worksheets.
7 Printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders

Two predefined reports are provided to print purchase orders and claims for overdue orders (see examples 12 and 13).

Before producing these, you should select the acquisitions records to be printed, using the Information retrieval services of MICRO-ISIS. Select records with Processing status (field 400) set to ORD:

\[ \text{ORD}/(400) \]

For these reports, you need a second search criterion based on the Date ordered (field 510). This requires a free-text search. For example, for purchase orders (to avoid reprinting orders made earlier):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{search set 1:} & \quad \text{ORD}/(400) \\
\text{search set 2:} & \quad ? \ #1 \ V510 \ >= \ '1994-04-01'
\end{align*}
\]

for order claims (to avoid sending these to items just ordered):

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{search set 1:} & \quad \text{ORD}/(400) \\
\text{search set 2:} & \quad ? \ #1 \ V510 \ < \ '1994-08-01'
\end{align*}
\]

Save the records found in a save file called ORDER for purchase orders, or CLAIM to produce the claims for overdue orders.

You can only print these reports using program REPORT. This program uses the Sorting and printing services of MICRO-ISIS to sort the information. It then requests a second program, ORDER, to print either the purchase orders or the claims for overdue books.

You will have to customize program ORDER to your centre’s own needs. To do this, change all the lines in the program marked with “<--”, as appropriate. Use any text editor or word processor to edit the file called ORDER.PAS (in directory ISISPAS on the diskette). These lines provide the name of your library that appears at the top of the printed form, the mailing address lines, and information about the size of the printed page. Should you have preprinted forms, you will need to modify this program to be compatible with your forms. Your institution’s name and address should be supplied in place of “--- Your institution’s name ---” and the information under “SHIP TO”. If you need more lines for the mailing address than are provided, simply add more lines to the program, exactly as shown. If you need fewer lines, remove the extra lines from the program. Be sure to indicate in the appropriate line in the program exactly how many lines are used for the shipping address.

After having made the changes to the program, you must recompile it. From the main MICRO-ISIS menu:

- request option A for Advanced programming services,
- select option C for compile,
- type the program name ORDER and press [Enter].

When the program has compiled, press Q for quit to return to the main MICRO-ISIS menu.

For simplicity, the MFN number has been used as the order number.
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

The sample printed purchase orders and claims for overdue orders at the end of this annex (examples 12 and 13) were both produced using the search expression:

ORD/(400)

The worksheets, display formats, and save files required to produce these reports are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Print worksheet</th>
<th>Sort worksheet</th>
<th>Print format&lt;sup&gt;40&lt;/sup&gt;</th>
<th>Save file</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>purchase orders</td>
<td>ORDER</td>
<td>ORDER</td>
<td>ORDER</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>claims</td>
<td>ORDER</td>
<td>SUPLS</td>
<td>CLAIM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The sort parameters used with these reports are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sort worksheet</th>
<th>First-level sort field</th>
<th>Sort type</th>
<th>Second-level sort field</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SUPLS</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>0&lt;sup&gt;41&lt;/sup&gt;</td>
<td>MFN</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK

1 Preparing the reformatting FST

An FST, called XCHANG, is provided to enable participating centres (PCs) to exchange data with the coordinating centre (CC). It must be customized for use with a particular PC as follows.

1. The PC acronym must be entered as an unconditional literal for Participating centre acronym (field 001), and as part of the repeatable preliteral used with Record number of parent (field 010), Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012).

Example

change the lines:

```
1 0  'acronym'
10 0  |ZZ-acronym-|v010
11 0  (|ZZ-acronym-|v011/)
12 0  (|ZZ-acronym-|v012/)
```

<sup>40</sup> Format ORDER is used by program ORDER to display the citation. Two other formats are also used by program ORDER: SUPPLR to display the supplier name and address, and SUPNAM to determine when a new supplier is selected.

<sup>41</sup> Sort type 0 sorts the data by the complete field.
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

to:

1 0 'CODESRIA'
10 0 |ZZ-CODESRIA-|v010
11 0 ( ZZ-CODESRIA- |v011/)
12 0 ( ZZ-CODESRIA- |v012/)

where CODESRIA is the acronym of the PC.

The ZZ- is appended to the front of the data in fields 010, 011, and 012 for the following reasons:

- **Fields 001 and 002** are inverted together, with a ZZ- appended to the front of the combined term. This allows all these references to be stored together at the end of the terms dictionary. In this way, they will not be retrieved when searching on the acronym (e.g., to retrieve the PC’s records or to retrieve titles containing the acronym).
- **When fields 010, 011, and 012** are printed or displayed, a search will be performed automatically in the display format, using the full field contents. The ZZ- is therefore required for the search to succeed.

**Example**

The original records at the PC (CODESRIA) are:

1. MFN: field 011 contains: 1298
2. MFN: field 010 contains: 1298

At the CC, these records become:

1. MFN:
   - field 001 contains: CODESRIA
   - field 002 contains: 1298
   - field 011 contains: ZZ-CODESRIA-1298

   **fields 001 and 002** are inverted together, resulting in the posting:
   ZZ-CODESRIA-1298

2. MFN:
   - field 001 contains: CODESRIA
   - field 002 contains: 1299
   - field 010 contains: ZZ-CODESRIA-1298

   **fields 001 and 002** are inverted together, resulting in the posting:
   ZZ-CODESRIA-1298

Thus, when record 2371 is printed at the CC, the contents of field 011, ZZ-CODESRIA-1299, are used in a search, and the posting for record 2372 is located. Therefore, 2372 is printed as the record number of part.

2. When records from a unilingual system are being exported to a multilingual system, the language code corresponding to the language of the system must be entered as an
unconditional literal. This language code will be assigned to the Language of analysis (field 020) in the records in the CC’s consolidated database.

Example
20 0 'Fr'

2 Sending data to the coordinating centre

To send completed catalogue records to the CC, perform the following steps.

- Using the MIBIS database, select the records to be sent to the CC. These are the records with Record status (field 003) N.

Example
N/(003)

- Save the results in a save file called XCHANG.
- Export the data using the Master file services of MICRO-ISIS. Select option E (Export CDS/ISIS file). Note the fields on the export menu that must be filled in as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Save file name:</td>
<td>XCHANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Hit file (Y/N)?:</td>
<td>N</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Reformating FST:</td>
<td>XCHANG</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Renumber records from:</td>
<td>leave empty</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The reformatting FST, XCHANG, copies only the fields to be sent to the CC, and performs all the necessary retrieval of information from authority file records.

Note Data has not been entered in the Record status (field 003) in the sample database.

VIII CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS

A program called CHANGE is provided that can be used to globally modify the contents of the two status fields: Record status (field 003), and Processing status (field 400).

After the current awareness bulletin or printed bibliographic indexes have been produced, the processing status should be changed from LIST to CAT. Similarly, after records have been sent to the CC for the network, the record status should be changed from N to S.

To change either of these fields, proceed as follows:

- select option A (Advanced programming services) from the main menu,
- select R (run), and
- type the program name CHANGE, and press [Enter].

You will be presented with a menu, from which you select which field you wish to change globally.
IX INVERSION

The inversion performed on the main database, MIBIS, by the supplied FST is straightforward except for the handling of data found in authority records and of fields referencing related bibliographic records.

1 Inverting fields containing references by MFN to authority records

When an authority record is used for Corporate author(s) (field 111), Affiliation (field 112), Other associated institution(s) (field 114), or Monographic series (field 140), the authority code (subfield ^z) is inverted, along with the information in the authority record. Therefore, one can search using either keywords or the authority code.

Example of a search on a corporate body

To retrieve all items with which the International Institute of Tropical Agriculture is associated, use the search expression:

INTERNATIONAL (F) INSTITUTE (F) TROPICAL (F) AGRICULTURE/(111)

or use the authority code of the body in the search expression:

1023/(111)

2 Inverting fields containing references to supplier authority records

The Supplier (field 515) is inverted in the bibliographic record and the supplier authority file record is referenced using an alphabetic code. Therefore, the authority file record must always be created before the bibliographic record is entered. Failure to do so will result in the supplier (field 515) not being properly inverted in the bibliographic record.

Note When a full database inversion is required, two full database inversions must be performed in succession. Failure to do so may result in the supplier (field 515) not being properly inverted in the bibliographic record.

One can search for a supplier using either keywords or the authority code.

Example of a search on a supplier

To retrieve all items on order from The Voluntary Health Association of India, use the search expression:

VOLUNTARY (F) HEALTH (F) ASSOCIATION (F) INDIA/(515) * ORD/(400)

or use the authority code of the supplier in the search expression:

VHAI/(515) * ORD/(400)
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

3 Inverting fields containing references to related bibliographic records

The second line of the inversion FST, MIBIS.FST, shows the contents of the Participating centre acronym (field 001) and the Participating centre record number (field 002) together, and assigns to the combined result the inversion identifier of 002. The FST entry is coded as:

```
2 0 "ZZ-"v001, "-"v002
```

This inversion is required by the coordinating centre (CC) in a network. When records are transferred from PCs to the CC, they are assigned new MFN numbers in the latter's database. Ordinarily, the contents of Record number of parent (field 010), Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012) would no longer be applicable. However, the inversion of the combination of the original record’s MFN with the PC’s acronym allows MICRO-ISIS to locate the original records being referenced in fields 010, 011, and 012. When the contributed record is retrieved, MICRO-ISIS is able to use this information to substitute the MFN of the related record in the CC in the display or printed output. An example is shown in Section VII: Exchanging data in a formal information network.

Note The second line — 2 0 "ZZ-"v001, "-"v002 — can be removed if you are not the CC of a formal information network. It can, however, be safely kept in the FST.

When selected records are resequenced for the production of printed bibliographic indexes, the original MFN numbers in fields 010, 011, and 012 no longer apply. To be able to correctly display resequenced record numbers, the original MFN of the record in MIBIS is kept with the resequenced MIBIS2 database. This MFN is inverted, so that the original record can be located, and the new record number then determined. This is the reason an inversion is required when creating the resequenced database.

By extension, if the CC produces printed bibliographic indexes of material contributed by PCs, the inversion techniques used on both MIBIS and MIBIS2 will ensure that the resequenced record numbers are used in all references to other records in the display format.

X LIMITATION OF CDS-PASCAL

CDS-PASCAL programs are provided to enhance the formatting of data, and to perform some of the tasks described in this annex.

One limitation of CDS-PASCAL may have an adverse effect on some of the functions performed by the programs provided. The limitation is that CDS-PASCAL cannot accept more than 255 characters of text passed to a format exit. This affects two of the format exits: BODY and REF.

When this limit is exceeded, results are unpredictable. In some cases, the extra text may be lost. In others, MICRO-ISIS can fail completely.

The diskette contains a directory called SAFE that contains alternative files that do not use the CDS-PASCAL format exits. These files can be used to ensure that MICRO-ISIS will not fail for these reasons. However, use of the alternative files may result in some inconsistency.
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

There are no records in the sample database that exceed the 255-character limit. If the length of any occurrence of the following fields is likely to exceed this limit, use the alternate files provided:

111 Corporate author(s)
112 Affiliation
113 Other associated institution(s)
211 Corporate author(s) — parent
901 Corporate body (CNAF records)

The alternate files in the SAFE directory are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Use this file</th>
<th>to replace in this file</th>
<th>directory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MIBIS.PFT</td>
<td>MIBIS.PFT</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIBISA.PFT</td>
<td>MIBISA.PFT</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAB.PFT</td>
<td>CAB.PFT</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACORPS.FMT</td>
<td>ACORPS.FMT</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIBIS2.PFT</td>
<td>MIBIS2.PFT</td>
<td>MIBIS2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ACORPS2.FMT</td>
<td>ACORPS2.FMT</td>
<td>MIBIS2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note: The format exit called REF is used to remove nonexistent references, which appear as zeros, when displaying Record number of parent (field 010), Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011), and Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012). No alternate solution is possible, except to accept the zeros in the output. The replacement display formats do not use REF for fields 011 or 012.

XI HEURISKO

An implementation is provided on the diskettes for use with Heurisko. The implementation on the diskette consists of the following files:

- an alternative inversion FST, which inverts only the bibliographic fields, and adds prefixes to the index entries suitable for use with Heurisko’s search facilities;
- file MIBISFT.RSK, which lists the available display formats;
- file MIBISST.RSK, which lists the searchable fields;
- file MIBISH2.RSK, which provides a dummy search help screen that you can modify;
- file MIBISDT.RSK, which provides the date extraction format;
- file MIBISH1.RSK, which provides a dummy description of the database that you can modify;
- file EURSKF.PAS, which links the MIBIS ISISPAS format exits to Heurisko; and
- file NOMINA.RSK, which links the MIBIS database to Heurisko.

To install MIBIS for use with Heurisko, you must do the following:

- Copy the file MIBIS.FST from the root directory of the diskette to the directory where you placed the MIBIS database. Refer to Section II: Installation on your microcomputer. Perform a full

---

42 Heurisko is a generalized user-friendly search and retrieval application for MICRO-ISIS developed by the Società per la Documentazione, le Biblioteche e gli Archivi - DBA, Florence, Italy. It is distributed with MICRO-ISIS outside Italy.
inversion (option $F$ — Full inverted file generation — in Inverted file services of MICRO-ISIS) on the complete database.

- Copy file **MIBISH1.RSK** from the root directory of the diskette to the MICRO-ISIS message directory (as defined by parameter 3 of the SYSPAR.PAR file).
- Compile program **EURSKF.PAS**. First ensure that any any format exits that you may have added to the display formats are included in the list of format exits in the USES statement in this program. Then, in Advanced programming services of MICRO-ISIS, request Compile, and specify the program name, **EURSKF**.
- Add the database MIBIS to the list of databases known to Heurisko. If this is the first or only database used with Heurisko, you can do this by copying the file NOMINA.RSK from the root directory of the diskette to the MICRO-ISIS data directory (as defined by parameter 5 of the SYSPAR.PAR file). If this is not the first database, you should add it to the NOMINA.RSK file existing on your system. Use the setup facilities of Heurisko (by pressing [Alt-S] when in a Heurisko menu), and type **MIBIS** at the Database name prompt.
- If you wish, edit any of the tables associated with the MIBIS database using the definition facilities of Heurisko (by pressing [Alt-S] when in a Heurisko menu).

The following fields are inverted in the database, with the prefixes shown:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Prefix</th>
<th>Inversion type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>300</td>
<td>PD=</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300, 301, 302, 303, 304</td>
<td>AD=</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>100, 101</td>
<td>TI=</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>110</td>
<td>PA=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>111, 112, 113</td>
<td>CA=</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114</td>
<td>ME=</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>123</td>
<td>DP=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>140</td>
<td>MS=</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142</td>
<td>PR=</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>161</td>
<td>DN=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>320</td>
<td>BH=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>410</td>
<td>LO=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>420</td>
<td>TM=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>007</td>
<td>BL=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008</td>
<td>LP=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>021</td>
<td>LT=</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

XII COMPLETE LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE MICRO-ISIS IMPLEMENTATION

The files related to the MICRO-ISIS implementation are listed below.

1 Directory structure

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MIBIS</th>
<th>Main database (MIBIS) and supporting files</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MIBIS2</td>
<td>Resequenced database (MIBIS2) and supporting files</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CORP</td>
<td>CORP database and supporting files used to produce the printed CNAF</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

SERIAL database and supporting files used to produce the printed SAF
ISISPAS CDS-PASCAL programs and format exits
SAVE Save files of retrieval requests
SAFE Replacement display formats, sort FST, and report worksheets for MIBIS and MIBIS2
INMAGIC Parallel implementation in INMAGIC Plus (see Annex 20)

2 Directory contents

2.1 Directory MIBIS

Database
MIBIS.FDT, MIBIS.FST, MIBIS.MST, MIBIS.XRF, MIBIS.CNT, MIBIS.N01, MIBIS.N02, MIBIS.L01, MIBIS.L02, MIBIS.IFP, MIBIS.ANY

Data entry worksheets
monograph/collection AMIBIS.FMT, BMIBIS.FMT, CMIBIS.FMT, DMIBIS.FMT, EMIBIS.FMT, FMIBIS.FMT, GMIBIS.FMT
analytic from a serial APARTS.FMT, BPARTS.FMT, CPARTS.FMT, DPARTS.FMT, EPARTS.FMT, FPARTS.FMT, GPARTS.FMT
analytic from a monograph/collection APARTM.FMT, BPARTM.FMT, CPARTM.FMT, DPARTM.FMT, EPARTM.FMT, FPARTM.FMT, GPARTM.FMT
acquisitions AACQIS.FMT, BACQIS.FMT, CACQIS.FMT, DACQIS.FMT
corporate authority ACORP.FMT
serials authority ASER.FMT
supplier authority ASUPPL.FMT

Display formats
browsing, catalogues MIBIS.PFT
browsing with abstract MIBISA.PFT
current awareness bulletin CAB.PFT
purchase order ORDER.PFT
claims CLAIM.PFT
proof TAGS.PFT
corporate names CORP.PFT
serials SERIAL.PFT
suppliers SUPPL.PFT
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

**Report worksheets**
- **author catalogue**
  - report: AAUTHC.FMT
  - sort: AAUTHS.FMT
- **title catalogue**
  - report: ATITLC.FMT
  - sort: ATITLS.FMT
- **corporate author catalogue**
  - report: ACORPC.FMT
  - sort: ACORPS.FMT
- **meeting catalogue**
  - report: AMEETC.FMT
  - sort: AMEETS.FMT
- **current awareness bulletin**
  - report: ACAB.FMT
  - sort: ACABS.FMT

**Specialized report worksheets, etc.**
- **purchase order/claim**
  - (dummy report): AORDER.FMT
  - (dummy report): ACLAIM.FMT
  - (dummy sort): ASUPLS.FMT
  - (format): SUPLR.PFT
  - (format): SUPNAM.PFT
- **resequence**
  - (dummy report): ANUMBR.FMT
  - (dummy sort): ANMBRS.FMT
  - (reformatting): RENUMB.FST
- **supplier authority file**
  - report: ASUPAF.FMT
  - sort: ASUPS.FMT
  - (used with ASUPAF.FMT): SUPAF.PFT
  - CNAF (to create the list): CNAF.FST
  - SAF (to create the list): SAF.FST
  - stopwors: MIBIS.STW
  - exchange records in a network: XCHANG.FST

**Heurisko files**
- MIBIS definitions: MIBISST.RSK, MIBISFT.RSK, MIBISDT.RSK, MIBISH2.RSK

**2.2 Directory MIBIS2**

**Database**
- MIBIS2.FDT, MIBIS2.FST, MIBIS2.MST, MIBIS2.XRF, MIBIS2.CNT, MIBIS2.N01, MIBIS2.N02, MIBIS2.L01, MIBIS2.L02, MIBIS2.IFP, MIBIS2.ANY, AMIBIS.FMT

**Display format**
- printed bibliographic indexes: MIBIS2.PFT
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

Report worksheets
main bibliographic index report AMAINI.FMT
sort AMAINS.FMT
author index report AAUTHI.FMT
sort AAUTHS.FMT
title index report ATITLI.FMT
sort ATITLS.FMT
corporate body index report ACORPI.FMT
sort ACORPS.FMT
subject index report ASUBJI.FMT
sort ASUBJS.FMT
geographic index report AGEOGI.FMT
sort AGEOGS.FMT

2.3 Directory CORP

Database
CORP.FDT, CORP.FST, CORP.MST, CORP.XRF, CORP.CNT, CORP.N01,
CORP.N02, CORP.L01, CORP.L02, CORP.IFP, CORP.ANY, ACORP.FMT

Display format
CNAF CORP.PFT

Report
CNAF report ACNAF.FMT
sort ACNAFS.FMT

2.4 Directory SERIAL

Database
SERIAL.FDT, SERIAL.FST, SERIAL.MST, SERIAL.XRF, SERIAL.CNT,
SERIAL.N01, SERIAL.N02, SERIAL.L01, SERIAL.L02, SERIAL.IFP,
SERIAL.ANY, ASERIA.FMT

Display format
SAF SERIAL.PFT

Report
SAF report ASAF.FMT
sort ASAFS.FMT

2.5 Directory ISISPAS

Programs
resequence database RENUMB.PAS, RENUMB.PCD
request printed outputs REPORT.PAS, REPORT.PCD
print orders and claims ORDER.PAS, ORDER.PCD
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

produce printed CNAF
produce printed SAF
change status fields
format exit list for Heurisko

Format exits
format corporate names
determine the number of
decimal digits in price
correct punctuation
format MFN references

2.6 Directory SAVE

save file — catalogues
save file — current awareness bulletin
save file — resequence
save file — purchase order
save file — claims
save file to produce CNAF
save file to produce SAF
save file to exchange data

2.7 Directory SAFE

Replacements for files in directory MIBIS
MIBIS.PFT
CAB.PFT

Replacement for file in directory MIBIS2
MIBIS2.PFT

2.8 Root directory

Heurisko files
Miscellaneous files

Inversion FST for use with Heurisko
Last minute implementation notes

CORP.PAS, CORP.PCD
CORP2.PAS, CORP2.PCD
SERIAL.PAS, SERIAL.PCD
SER2.PAS, SER2.PCD
CHANGE.PAS, CHANGE.PCD
EURSKF.PAS
BODY.PAS, BODY.PCD
DEC.PAS, DEC.PCD
LINE.PAS, LINE.PCD
REF.PAS, REF.PCD
CAT.SAV
CAB.SAV
PRINT.SAV
ORDER.SAV
CLAIM.SAV
CNAF.SAV
SAF.SAV
XCHANG.SAV
MIBISA.PFT
ACORPS.FMT
MIBISH1.RSK, NOMINA.RSK
MICBIS.FST
READ.ME
ANNEX 19: IMPLEMENTATION USING MICRO-ISIS WITH SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

XIII  SAMPLE PRINTED OUTPUTS

The following examples are in the format of the actual printout from MICRO-ISIS. In principle, the only changes are the addition of a header on each page and changing the page number to correspond to the sequence in this manual.

Example 1.  Author catalogue
Example 2.  Title catalogue
Example 3.  Corporate author catalogue
Example 4.  Meeting catalogue
Example 5.  Current awareness bulletin
Example 6.  Main bibliographic index
Example 7.  Author index
Example 8.  Title index
Example 9.  Corporate body index
Example 10. Subject index
Example 11. Geographic index
Example 12. Purchase orders
Example 13. Claims for overdue orders
Example 14. Corporate Name Authority File
Example 15. Serials Authority File
Example 16. Supplier authority file
AIYEPEKU, W.O.

International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs / Aiyepeku, W.O. (University of Ibadan. Department of Library Studies, Ibadan NG) International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)

Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p. : 70 ref.
ISBN: 0-88936-366-8
Document number: IDRC-TS43e

Project: 3-A-80-4079.
Also published in French and Spanish.
Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS; ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS; IDRC - CARISPLAN; DIS; INFOPLAN; UN; EVALUATION; RECOMMENDATIONS; LATIN AMERICA; CARIBBEAN; AFRICA; PADIS

Record no. 8 Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY Copies: 2

CHIMEDZA, R.

Savings clubs: the mobilisation of rural finances in Zimbabwe / Chimedza, R. (University of Zimbabwe. Department of Land Management, Harare ZW)

ISBN: 92-2-105152-8

Descriptors: CREDIT COOPERATIVES; SAVINGS; WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION - CASE STUDIES; ZIMBABWE

Parent record: 28
Record no. 29 Location: MF111 MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

CROWLEY, D.

Mass media manual: how to run a radio learning group campaign / Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.


Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION; NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING; BOTSWANA

Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2
AUTHOR CATALOGUE

ETHERINGTON, A.

Mass media manual: how to run a radio learning group campaign / Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION; NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING; BOTSWANA
Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

GASSOL DE HOROWITZ, ROSARIO

Graduate education for librarianship in Venezuela: a theoretical framework / Gassol de Horowitz, Rosario
University of California, Berkeley, CA US (Degree granting inst.)
212 p. : bibliog. p. 195-212
Dissertation, D.L.S.
Descriptors: LIBRARY SCIENCE; HIGHER EDUCATION; GRADUATES - EDUCATIONAL NEEDS; COMMUNICATION; INFORMATION SYSTEMS; INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY; CULTURE; VENEZUELA
Record no. 44 Location: MAIN 020:378(87) GAS Copies: 1

JACSO, PETER

MICRO-CDS/ISIS: a bibliographic information management software from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor (Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342), v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS; INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

JELLIFFE, D.B.

Child health in the tropics: a practical handbook for health personnel / Jelliffe, D.B., ed. (University of California, Los Angeles, CA US)
ISBN: 0-7131-4438-6
Descriptors: MATERNAL AND CHILD HEALTH; CHILD DEVELOPMENT; INFANTS - NUTRITION; DISEASES; HEALTH EDUCATION; IMMUNIZATION; HEALTH SERVICES; HEALTH POLICY; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; TROPICAL ZONE
Record no. 37 Location: MAIN 613.9 JEL Copies: 1

- 271 -
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 1

KIDD, R.
Mass media manual: how to run a radio learning group campaign / Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION; NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING; BOTSWANA
Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

MAGLACAS, A.M.
The potential of the traditional birth attendant / Maglacas, A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO. Division of Health Manpower Development, Geneva CH)
(WHO offset publication ; no. 95)
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5
Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING PROGRAMMES - TRADITIONAL CULTURE; FAMILY PLANNING; LITERACY; MORBIDITY; EVALUATION
Record no. 36 Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95 Copies: 1

MAL, B.C.
Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)
In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER; APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS
Record no. 30 Location: MF176 Copies: 1

MALIYADDE, CHANDRASENA
Rural housing problems / Maliyadde, Chandrasena
Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL POPULATION - INVESTMENTS; SRI LANKA
Record no. 48 Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL Copies: 1
MISHRA, A.P.

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)
In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER; APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS
Record no. 30 Location: MF176 Copies: 1

MORIN-LABATUT, GISELE

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA
Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.
Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les systèmes d’information relatifs au développement / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de l’Information, Ottawa, ON CA
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d’information relatifs au développement, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L’INFORMATION - DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2
MUNTEMBA, S.

Rural development and women: lessons from the field / Muntemba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH
ISBN: 92-2-105154-4
Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT;
AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT;
WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT EVALUATION
See also record number(s) 29 for part(s).
Record no. 28 Location: MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

N'SANGOU, A.

La contribution des buy’em sell’em au développement [The contribution of the "buy’em sell’em" to development] / N’Sangou, A. (Institut des Sciences Humaines, Yaoundé CM)
ISBN: 2-86537-129-8
Descriptors: PURCHASING; MARKETING; WOMEN’S ROLE - FOOD;
CAMEROON
Record no. 27 Location: MAIN 396 BAR Copies: 1

PERERA, K.P.G.M.

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.
Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION - RURAL AREAS; RURAL POPULATION; SRI LANKA
Record no. 47 Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER Copies: 1

ROSE, TORE

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (Sponsor)
Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (Sponsor)
ISBN: 92-64-12749-6
Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL
AUTHOR CATALOGUE

ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA

See also record number(s) 10 for part(s).

SIMONS, J.
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5
Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING PROGRAMMES - TRADITIONAL CULTURE; FAMILY PLANNING; LITERACY; MORBIDITY; EVALUATION

SLY, MAUREEN
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.

In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 1

AUTHOR CATALOGUE

relatifs au développement, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION - DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

SZUCS, ANDRAS

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor (Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342), v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS; INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

VARGA, SANDOR

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor (Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342), v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS; INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

WEEKES-VAGLIANI, WINIFRED

Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred (OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS; BURKINA FASO; MALI
Parent record: 9
Record no. 10 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1
AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH POLICY AND MANAGEMENT: PAPERS PRESENTED AT THE WORKSHOP ON AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH POLICY AND MANAGEMENT, 26-30 SEPTEMBER 1983, PORT OF SPAIN, TRINIDAD

Agricultural research policy and management: papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT
Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983
International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (Funder)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)
Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)
Port of Spain: ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.
Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126
Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA
Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1

CASE STUDIES IN POPULATION POLICY: NIGERIA

Case studies in population policy: Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US
(Population policy paper; no. 16)
Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83
Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY; DEVELOPMENT PLANS - POPULATION CENSUSES; STATISTICAL TABLES; NIGERIA
Record no. 41 Location: MAIN 312(669) UN Copies: 1

CHILD HEALTH IN THE TROPICS: A PRACTICAL HANDBOOK FOR HEALTH PERSONNEL

Child health in the tropics: a practical handbook for health personnel / Jelliffe, D.B., ed. (University of California, Los Angeles, CA US)
ISBN: 0-7131-4438-6
Descriptors: MATERNAL AND CHILD HEALTH; CHILD DEVELOPMENT; INFANTS - NUTRITION; DISEASES; HEALTH EDUCATION;
LA CONTRIBUTION DES BUY'EM SELL'EM AU DEVELOPPEMENT

La contribution des buy' em sell' em au développement [The contribution of the "buy' em sell' em" to development] / N'Sangou, A. (Institut des Sciences Humaines, Yaoundé CM)
ISBN: 2-86537-129-8
Descriptors: PURCHASING; MARKETING; WOMEN'S ROLE - FOOD; CAMEROON

CRISIS AND RECOVERY IN SUBSAHARIAN AFRICA

OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)
University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (Sponsor)
Université de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (Sponsor)
ISBN: 92-64-12749-6
Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA
See also record number(s) 10 for part(s).

DIRECTORIO DE LAS FACULTADES Y ESCUELAS DE MEDICINA DEL CONTINENTE : NORTE, CENTRO Y SUR

Directorio de las facultades y escuelas de medicina del continente : norte, centro y sur / Federación Panamericana de Asociaciones de Facultades (Escuelas) de Medicina, Caracas VE
Descriptors: DIRECTORIOS; ENSEÑANZA DE LA MEDICINA; UNIVERSIDADES; AMERICA LATINA

Record no. 37 Location: MAIN 613.9 JEL Copies: 1

Record no. 27 Location: MAIN 396 BAR Copies: 1

Record no. 9 Location(s) MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

Record no. 13 Location: REF 058(8)378.6 FED Copies: 1
DISTRICT INTEGRATED RURAL DEVELOPMENT PROGRAMME

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.
Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION - RURAL AREAS; RURAL POPULATION; SRI LANKA
Record no. 47 Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER Copies: 1

FINAL REPORT : TECHNICAL ASSISTANCE IN PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT TO THE GOVERNMENT OF BHUTAN

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan / Public Administration Service, McLean, VA US
UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)
Availability: Restr. UNDP, United Nations Plaza, New York, NY 10017, USA.
Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT; TRAINING PROGRAMMES; MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT - MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES; MANPOWER PLANNING; CIVIL SERVICE; TEACHING METHODS; TECHNICAL COOPERATION; PROJECT REPORTS; RESTRICTED DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN
Record no. 45 Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB Copies: 1

GRADUATE EDUCATION FOR LIBRARIANSHIP IN VENEZUELA : A THEORETICAL FRAMEWORK

Graduate education for librarianship in Venezuela : a theoretical framework / Gassol de Horowitz, Rosario
University of California, Berkeley, CA US (Degree granting inst.)
Dissertation, D.L.S.
Descriptors: LIBRARY SCIENCE; HIGHER EDUCATION; GRADUATES - EDUCATIONAL NEEDS; COMMUNICATION; INFORMATION SYSTEMS; INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY; CULTURE; VENEZUELA
Record no. 44 Location: MAIN 020:378(87) GAS Copies: 1
ANNEX 19

EXAMPLE 2

TITLE CATALOGUE

A GUIDE TO WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS AND AGENCIES SERVING WOMEN IN KENYA

A guide to women's organizations and agencies serving women in Kenya [Un guide d'organisations et d'agences du Kenya au service des femmes] / Mazingira Institute, Nairobi KE
Nairobi : Mazingira Institute, 1985. 311 p. : ill.
Version mise à jour et augmentée de Directory of women's organizations in Kenya.
Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; ORGANISATIONS FEMININES; KENYA
Record no. 15 Location: REF 058(676.2)396:061 MAZ Copies: 1

INTERNATIONAL SOCIOECONOMIC INFORMATION SYSTEMS : AN EVALUATIVE STUDY OF DEVSIS-TYPE PROGRAMS

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs / Aiyepeku, W.O. (University of Ibadan. Department of Library Studies, Ibadan NG)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p. : 70 ref.
ISBN: 0-88936-366-8
Document number: IDRC-TS43e
Project: 3-A-80-4079.
Also published in French and Spanish.
Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS; ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS; IDRC - CARISPLAN; DIS; INFOPLAN; UN; EVALUATION; RECOMMENDATIONS; LATIN AMERICA; CARIBBEAN; AFRICA; PADIS
Record no. 8 Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY Copies: 2

LOW-COST TUBEWELLS FOR DEVELOPING COUNTRIES

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)
In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER; APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS
Record no. 30 Location: MF176 Copies: 1
MANUAL FOR THE PREPARATION OF RECORDS IN DEVELOPMENT-INFORMATION SYSTEMS

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA
Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.
Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

MANUEL DE TRAITEMENT DES DONNEES BIBLIOGRAPHIQUES DANS LES SYSTEMES D'INFORMATION RELATIFS AU DEVELOPPEMENT

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les systèmes d'information relatifs au développement / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information relatifs au développement, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION - DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 2

TITLE CATALOGUE

MASS MEDIA MANUAL : HOW TO RUN A RADIO LEARNING GROUP CAMPAIGN

Mass media manual : how to run a radio learning group campaign / Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; Kidd, R.
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL RADIO; ADULT EDUCATION;
NON-FORMAL EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; ADMINISTRATIVE ASPECTS; TRAINING;
BOTSWANA
Record no. 25 Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981 Copies: 2

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : A BIBLIOGRAPHIC INFORMATION MANAGEMENT SOFTWARE FROM UNESCO

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor
(Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)
In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342),
Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS;
INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES
Record no. 7 Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC Copies: 1

THE POTENTIAL OF THE TRADITIONAL BIRTH ATTENDANT

The potential of the traditional birth attendant / Maglacas, A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO. Division of Health Manpower Development, Geneva CH)
(WHO offset publication ; no. 95)
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5
Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING PROGRAMMES - TRADITIONAL CULTURE; FAMILY PLANNING; LITERACY; MORBIDITY;
EVALUATION
Record no. 36 Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95 Copies: 1
REGISTER : DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH PROJECTS IN ARAB COUNTRIES

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN
ISBN: 92-64-03081-6
Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.
Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES
Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

REPERTOIRE : PROJETS DE RECHERCHE EN MATIERE DE DEVELOPPEMENT DANS LES PAYS ARABES

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN
ISBN: 92-64-03081-6
Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.
Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES
Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

RURAL DEVELOPMENT AND WOMEN : LESSONS FROM THE FIELD

Rural development and women : lessons from the field / Muntemba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH
ISBN: 92-2-105154-4
Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT; AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT; WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT EVALUATION
See also record number(s) 29 for part(s).
Record no. 28 Location: MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 2

RURAL HOUSING PROBLEMS

Rural housing problems / Maliyadde, Chandrasena
Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL POPULATION - INVESTMENTS; SRI LANKA
Record no. 48 Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL Copies: 1

SAVINGS CLUBS: THE MOBILISATION OF RURAL FINANCES IN ZIMBABWE

Savings clubs : the mobilisation of rural finances in Zimbabwe / Chimedza, R. (University of Zimbabwe. Department of Land Management, Harare ZW)
ISBN: 92-2-105152-8
Descriptors: CREDIT COOPERATIVES; SAVINGS; WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION - CASE STUDIES; ZIMBABWE
Parent record: 28
Record no. 29 Location: MF111 MAIN 396 MUN Copies: 1

WOMEN, FOOD AND RURAL DEVELOPMENT

Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred (OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS; BURKINA FASO; MALI
Parent record: 9
Record no. 10 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1
ASSOCIATION DES INSTITUTS ET CENTRES ARABES DE RECHERCHE POUR LE DEVELOPPEMENT ECONOMIQUE ET SOCIAL, TUNIS TN

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN

ISBN: 92-64-03081-6
Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.
Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES

Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

CARIBBEAN COUNCIL FOR SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY, PORT OF SPAIN TT

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT

Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983
International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (Funder)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)
Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)

Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.
Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126
Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA

Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1

CENTRE DE RECHERCHES POUR LE DEVELOPPEMENT INTERNATIONAL. DIVISION DES SCIENCES DE L’INFORMATION, OTTAWA, ON CA

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les systèmes d’information relatifs au développement / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 3  CORPORATE AUTHOR CATALOGUE

Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d’information relatifs au développement, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L’INFORMATION - DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24  Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f)  Copies: 2

ECLAC. SUBREGIONAL HEADQUARTERS FOR THE CARIBBEAN, PORT OF SPAIN TT

Agricultural research policy and management: papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT
Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983
International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (Funder)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)
Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)
Port of Spain: ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.
Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126
Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA
Record no. 17  Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL  Copies: 1

FEDERACION PANAMERICANA DE ASOCIACIONES DE FACULTADES (ESCUELAS) DE MEDICINA, CARACAS VE

Directorio de las facultades y escuelas de medicina del continente : norte, centro y sur / Federación Panamericana de Asociaciones de Facultades (Escuelas) de Medicina, Caracas VE
Descriptors: DIRECTORIOS; ENSEÑANZA DE LA MEDICINA;
CORPORATE AUTHOR CATALOGUE

UNIVERSIDADES; AMERICA LATINA

Record no. 13  Location:  REF 058(8)378.6 FED  Copies: 1

ILO, GENEVA CH

Rural development and women: lessons from the field / Muntemba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH
ISBN: 92-2-105154-4
Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT;
AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT;
WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT
EVALUATION
See also record number(s) 29 for part(s).

Record no. 28  Location:  MAIN 396 MUN  Copies: 1

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE. INFORMATION SCIENCES
DIVISION, OTTAWA, ON CA

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA
Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS -
DEVISIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS;
METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.

Record no. 1  Location:  REF MAIN 025.315 MOR  Copies: 2

MAZINGIRA INSTITUTE, NAIROBI KE

A guide to women's organizations and agencies serving women in
Kenya [Un guide d'organisations et d'agences du Kenya au
service des femmes] / Mazingira Institute, Nairobi KE
Nairobi : Mazingira Institute, 1985. 311 p. : ill.
Version mise à jour et augmentée de Directory of women's
organizations in Kenya.
Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; ORGANISATIONS FEMININES; KENYA

Record no. 15  Location:  REF 058(676.2)396:061 MAZ  Copies: 1
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 3
CORPORATE AUTHOR CATALOGUE

OCDE. CENTRE DE DEVELOPPEMENT, PARIS FR

Répertoire : projets de recherche en matière de développement dans les pays arabes = Register : development research projects in Arab countries / OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR / Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN

ISBN: 92-64-03081-6
Texte parallèle en français et en anglais.
Descriptors: REPERTOIRES; PROJETS DE RECHERCHE; PROJETS DE DEVELOPPEMENT; ORGANISATIONS REGIONALES - PAYS ARABES

Record no. 31 Location: REF 058(5-0511)338 OCD Copies: 1

PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION SERVICE, MCLEAN, VA US

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan / Public Administration Service, McLean, VA US
UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)
Availability: Restr. UNDP, United Nations Plaza, New York, NY 10017, USA.
Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT; TRAINING PROGRAMMES; MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT - MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES; MANPOWER PLANNING; CIVIL SERVICE; TEACHING METHODS; TECHNICAL COOPERATION; PROJECT REPORTS; RESTRICTED DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN

Record no. 45 Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB Copies: 1

UN. POPULATION DIVISION, NEW YORK, NY US

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US
(Population policy paper ; no. 16)
Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83
Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY; DEVELOPMENT PLANS - POPULATION CENSUSES; STATISTICAL TABLES; NIGERIA

Record no. 41 Location: MAIN 312(669) UN Copies: 1
CONFERENCE ON REHABILITATION AND RECOVERY IN SUBSAHARAN AFRICA, PARIS, FR, 14-16 NOV 1984

ISBN: 92-64-12749-6
Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA
See also record number(s) 10 for part(s).
Record no. 9 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS; BURKINA FASO; MALI
Parent record: 9
Record no. 10 Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS Copies: 1

REUNION TECHNIQUE SUR LES METHODOLOGIES COMMUNES, MONT SAINTE-MARIE, PQ, CA, 9-13 NOV 1981

ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION -
REUNION TECHNIQUE SUR LES METHODOLOGIES COMMUNES, OTTAWA, ON, CA, 3-7 NOV 1981

Manuel de traitement des données bibliographiques dans les systèmes d'information relatifs au développement / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International. Division des Sciences de l'Information, Ottawa, ON CA
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 nov 1981
Réunion Technique sur les Méthodologies Communes, Mont Sainte-Marie, PQ CA, 9-13 nov 1981
In: Méthodes préconisées dans les systèmes d'information relatifs au développement, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-490-7
Document number: IDRC-TS40f
Version française par Marcelle Saint-Arnaud.
Descriptors: MANUELS; CATALOGAGE; ANALYSE DE L'INFORMATION - DEVSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGIE; INDEXAGE; ANALYSE DE CONTENU; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 1.
Record no. 24 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR(f) Copies: 2

TECHNICAL MEETING ON COMMON METHODOLOGIES, MONT SAINTE-MARIE, PQ, CA, 9-13 NOV 1981

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA
Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.
Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2
TECHNICAL MEETING ON COMMON METHODOLOGIES, OTTAWA, ON, CA, 3-7 NOV 1981

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981

In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVISIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
For other language version(s) see record no(s): 24.
Record no. 1 Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR Copies: 2

WORKSHOP ON AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH POLICY AND MANAGEMENT, PORT OF SPAIN, TT, 26-30 SEP 1983

Agricultural research policy and management : papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT

Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983
International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (Funder)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (Funder)
Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)

Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.
Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126
Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA

Record no. 17 Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL Copies: 1
AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH

Agricultural research policy and management: papers presented at the Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, 26-30 September 1983, Port of Spain, Trinidad / ECLAC.

Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT / Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT

Workshop on Agricultural Research Policy and Management, Port of Spain TT, 26-30 Sep 1983

International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL

(Funder)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA

(Funder)

Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE

(Funder)

Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (Funder)

Port of Spain : ECLAC, 26 Nov 1984. 2 v.

Document number: LC/CAR/G. 126

Descriptors: AGRICULTURAL RESEARCH; RESEARCH POLICY; RESEARCH PROGRAMMES; ORGANIZATION OF RESEARCH - REGIONAL COOPERATION; RESEARCH CENTRES; BANANAS; COCOA; COFFEE; COCONUTS; POTATOES; RICE; SORGHUM; SUGAR CANE; CARIBBEAN; LATIN AMERICA

Location: MAIN 630(729.8) ECL

Record no. 17 Copies: 1

COMPUTER SOFTWARE

MICRO-CDS/ISIS : a bibliographic information management software from Unesco / Jacso, Peter; Szucs, Andras; Varga, Sandor (Computer Applications and Service Company, Budapest HU)

In: Microcomputers for information management (ISSN 0742-2342), v. 3, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 173-198.

Descriptors: ISIS; COMPUTER PROGRAMMES; MICROCOMPUTERS; INFORMATION USERS; LIBRARIES

Location: MAIN 681.3 JAC

Record no. 7 Copies: 1

DEVELOPMENT - GENERAL

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa / Rose, Tore, ed.

Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984

OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (Sponsor)

University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (Sponsor)

University de Clermont I. Centre d'Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (Sponsor)


ISBN: 92-64-12749-6

Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA

Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS

Record no. 9 Copies: 1
EDUCATION AND TRAINING

Graduate education for
librarianship in Venezuela: a
theoretical framework / Gassol
de Horowitz, Rosario
University of California,
Berkeley, CA US (Degree
granting inst.)
Ann Arbor, MI: University
Microfilms International,
195-212
Dissertation, D.L.S.
Descriptors: LIBRARY SCIENCE;
HIGHER EDUCATION;
GRADUATES -
EDUCATIONAL NEEDS;
COMMUNICATION;
INFORMATION SYSTEMS;
INFORMATION
TECHNOLOGY; CULTURE;
VENEZUELA
Location: MAIN 020:378(87) GAS
Record no. 44 Copies: 1

Mass media manual: how to run a
radio learning group campaign / 
Crowley, D.; Etherington, A.; 
Kidd, R.
2d rev. ed. - Bonn:
Descriptors: MANUALS; EDUCATIONAL
RADIO; ADULT
EDUCATION; NON-FORMAL
EDUCATION - NATIONAL LEVEL; DEVELOPING
COUNTRIES;
ADMINISTRATIVE
ASPECTS; TRAINING;
BOTSWANA
Location: MAIN 371.33 C7 1981
Record no. 25 Copies: 2

The potential of the traditional
birth attendant / Maglacas,
A.M., ed.; Simons, J., ed. (WHO.
Division of Health Manpower
Development, Geneva CH)
(WHO offset publication; no. 95)
ISBN: 92-4-170095-5
Descriptors: MIDWIVES; TRAINING
PROGRAMMES -
TRADITIONAL CULTURE;
FAMILY PLANNING;
LITERACY; MORBIDITY;
EVALUATION
Location: MAIN 613 WHO no. 95
Record no. 36 Copies: 1

FINANCE

Savings clubs: the mobilisation
of rural finances in Zimbabwe / 
Chimedza, R. (University of
Zimbabwe. Department of Land
Management, Harare ZW)
In: Rural development and women:
lessons from the field /
Muntemba, S., ed., v. 1, p.
161-174.
ISBN: 92-2-105152-8
Descriptors: CREDIT COOPERATIVES;
SAVINGS; WOMEN’S
PARTICIPATION - CASE STUDIES; ZIMBABWE
Location: MF111 MAIN 396 MUN
Record no. 29 Copies: 1

HEALTH

Child health in the tropics: a
practical handbook for health
personnel / Jelliffe, D.B., ed.
(University of California, Los
Angeles, CA US)
5th ed. - London: Edward
Arnold, 1985. 290 p.: ill.
ISBN: 0-7131-4438-6
Descriptors: MATERNAL AND CHILD
HEALTH; CHILD
DEVELOPMENT; INFANTS - NUTRITION; DISEASES; HEALTH EDUCATION; IMMUNIZATION; HEALTH SERVICES; HEALTH POLICY; DEVELOPING COUNTRIES; TROPICAL ZONE

Location: MAIN 613.9 JEL
Record no. 37 Copies: 1

Example 5
CURRENT AWARENESS BULLETIN

Also published in French and Spanish.

Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS; ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS; IDRC - CARISPLAN; DIS; INFOPLAN; UN; EVALUATION; RECOMMENDATIONS; LATIN AMERICA; CARIBBEAN; AFRICA; PADIS

Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY
Record no. 8 Copies: 2

HOUSING

Rural housing problems / Maliyadde, Chandrasena
Descriptors: HOUSING; RURAL POPULATION - INVESTMENTS; SRI LANKA

Examines the nature of housing problems among the rural population in Sri Lanka. Includes information about the investment in housing and makes suggestions for improvement.

Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL
Record no. 48 Copies: 1

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs / Aiyepeku, W.O. (University of Ibadan, Department of Library Studies, Ibadan NG)
International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (Funder)
Ottawa, ON : IDRC, 1983. 100 p. : 70 ref.
ISBN: 0-88936-366-8
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Project: 3-A-80-4079.

This publication contains guidelines for the record structure and content of bibliographic records in development-information systems. It is intended to be a guide for the designers of new systems and for those seeking to improve existing systems. The manual is the result of 5-6 years experience.

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems / Morin-Labatut, Gisèle; Sly, Maureen / International Development Research Centre. Information Sciences Division, Ottawa, ON CA

Technical Meeting on Common Methodologies, Ottawa, ON CA, 3-7 Nov 1981
In: Recommended methods for development-information systems, v. 1
ISBN: 0-88936-354-4
Document number: IDRC-TS40e
Descriptors: MANUALS; CATALOGUING; INFORMATION ANALYSIS - DEVSIS; INDEXING; CONTENT ANALYSIS; AGRIS; METHODOLOGY; ISIS; MINISIS
with a variety of regional and national DEVSI$ (Development Sciences Information System) systems and can be considered to be an update of the technical recommendations of the DEVSI$ Study Team in 1975. The major part of the manual contains field-by-field guidelines to be used by a documentalist when creating records in a development-information system. Numerous annexes are appended, including a data-definition table, sample completed worksheets, a correspondence for UNISIST and AGRIS field tags, guidelines for implementation under MINISIS, CDS/ISIS and DOS/ISIS, a glossary, and a bibliography.

Location: REF MAIN 025.315 MOR
Record no. 1 Copies: 2

LABOUR

Rural development and women: lessons from the field / Munte$ba, S., ed. / ILO, Geneva CH
ISBN: 92-2-105154-4
Descriptors: WOMEN'S PARTICIPATION; RURAL EMPLOYMENT; AGRICULTURAL PRODUCTION - MARKETING; CREDIT; WOMEN'S ORGANIZATIONS; CASE STUDIES; PROJECT EVALUATION

Location: MAIN 396 MUN
Record no. 28 Copies: 1

MANAGEMENT

Final report: technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan / Public Administration Service, McLean, VA US
UNDP, New York, NY US (Funder)

Availability: Restr. UNDP, United Nations Plaza, New York, NY 10017, USA.
Descriptors: PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT; TRAINING PROGRAMMES; MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT - MANAGEMENT TECHNIQUES; MANPOWER PLANNING; CIVIL SERVICE; TEACHING METHODS; TECHNICAL COOPERATION; PROJECT REPORTS; RESTRICTED DOCUMENTS; BHUTAN

Contractor's report on field work performed in the delivery of an in-country training programme in Bhutan consisting of: 1) public administration and accepted techniques and processes of modern management; 2) elements of a personnel management system; and 3) orientation in the use of manpower planning and assessment methods as an integral element of management in the public service. Purpose of programme was to strengthen and improve the management capabilities of officials responsible for managing the public sector institutions of Bhutan. Discusses methodology and provides a week-by-week description of project activities. Reports all programme objectives met or exceeded, and concludes with findings based on a limited
needs assessment. Recommends, inter alia, more and frequent short-term training courses, skills workshops, seminars, etc.; trained trainers for each department; and development of personnel policy by Royal Civil Service Commission. Supporting documentation annexed.

Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB
Record no. 45  Copies: 1

POPULATION

Case studies in population policy: Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US
(Population policy paper ; no. 16)
Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83
Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY; DEVELOPMENT PLANS - POPULATION CENSUSES; STATISTICAL TABLES; NIGERIA

Location: MAIN 312(669) UN
Record no. 41  Copies: 1

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.
Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION - RURAL AREAS; RURAL POPULATION; SRI LANKA

Studies the District Integrated Rural Development Programme which commenced in 1976. Discusses the organizational setup, selection of districts, the government agencies involved and their activities.

Location: MF176
Record no. 30  Copies: 1

TRADE

La contribution des buy'em sell'em au développement [The contribution of the "buy'em sell'em" to development] / N'Sangou, A. (Institut des Sciences Humaines, Yaoundé CM)
ISBN: 2-86537-129-8
Descriptors: PURCHASING; MARKETING; WOMEN'S ROLE - FOOD; CAMEROON

Location: MAIN 396 BAR
Record no. 27  Copies: 1

WATER

Low-cost tubewells for developing countries / Mal, B.C.; Mishra, A.P. (Rajendra Agricultural University. College of Agricultural Engineering, Samastipur IN)
In: International journal for development technology (ISSN 0263-418X), v. 4, no. 3, Sep 1986, p. 197-203.
Descriptors: IRRIGATION EQUIPMENT; PUMPS; GROUNDWATER; APPROPRIATE TECHNOLOGY - BAMBOO; COST ANALYSIS

Location: MF176
Record no. 30  Copies: 1
WOMEN

Women, food and rural development
/ Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred
(OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS;
BURKINA FASO; MALI
Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS
Record no. 10 Copies: 1
DEVELOPMENT - GENERAL

5001
ISBN: 92-64-12749-6
Descriptors: ECONOMIC RECESSION; ECONOMIC POLICY; INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS - ECONOMIC DEVELOPMENT; SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; CONFERENCE REPORTS; AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA
See also record number(s) 5008 for part(s).
Location: MAIN 333.32(548.7) MAL
Copies: 1

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

5003
Descriptors: INFORMATION SYSTEMS; ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT; DEVSIS; IDRC - CARISPLAN; DIS; INFOPLAN; UN; EVALUATION; RECOMMENDATIONS; LATIN AMERICA; CARIBBEAN; AFRICA; PADIS
Location: MAIN 002:338 AIY
Copies: 2
This publication contains guidelines for the record structure and content of bibliographic records in development-information systems. It is intended to be a guide for the designers of new systems and for those seeking to improve existing systems. The manual is the result of 5-6 years experience with a variety of regional and national DEVISIS (Development Sciences Information System) systems and can be considered to be an update of the technical recommendations of the DEVISIS Study Team in 1975. The major part of the manual contains field-by-field guidelines to be used by a documentalist when creating records in a development-information system. Numerous annexes are appended, including a data-definition table, sample completed worksheets, a correspondence for UNISIST and AGRIS field tags, guidelines for implementation under MINISIS, CDS/ISIS and DOS/ISIS, a glossary, and a bibliography.

Contractor’s report on field work performed in the delivery of an in-country training programme in Bhutan consisting of: 1) public administration and accepted techniques and processes of modern management; 2) elements of a personnel management system; and 3) orientation in the use of manpower planning and assessment methods as an integral element of management in the public service. Purpose of programme was to strengthen and improve the management capabilities of officials responsible for managing the public sector institutions of Bhutan. Discusses methodology and provides a week-by-week description of project activities. Reports all programme objectives met or exceeded, and concludes.
with findings based on a limited needs assessment. Recommends, inter alia, more and frequent short-term training courses, skills workshops, seminars, etc.; trained trainers for each department; and development of personnel policy by Royal Civil Service Commission. Supporting documentation annexed.

Location: RESTR 658.3 PUB
Copies: 1

POPULATION

5006
Case studies in population policy: Nigeria / UN. Population Division, New York, NY US
Document number: ST/ESA/SER.R/83
Descriptors: POPULATION POLICY;
DEVELOPMENT PLANS - POPULATION CENSUSES;
STATISTICAL TABLES;
NIGERIA

Location: MAIN 312(669) UN
Copies: 1

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

5007
District Integrated Rural Development Programme / Perera, K.P.G.M.
Descriptors: RURAL DEVELOPMENT;
DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION - RURAL AREAS; RURAL POPULATION; SRI LANKA

Studies the District Integrated Rural Development Programme which commenced in 1976. Discusses the organizational setup, selection of districts, the government agencies involved and their activities.

Location: MAIN 711.3(548.7) PER
Copies: 1

WOMEN

5008
Women, food and rural development / Weekes-Vagliani, Winifred (OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR)
Conference on Rehabilitation and Recovery in Subsaharan Africa, Paris FR, 14-16 Nov 1984
Descriptors: WOMEN'S ROLE; FOOD PRODUCTION - DEVELOPMENT PROJECTS;
BURKINA FASO; MALI

Parent record: 5001
Location: MAIN 330.1(6) ROS
Copies: 1
AIYEPEKU, W.O.
  International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

MALIYADDE, CHANDRASENA
  Rural housing problems (5002)

MORIN-LABATUT, GISELE
  Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)

PERERA, K.P.G.M.
  District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

ROSE, TORE
  Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

SLY, MAUREEN
  Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)

WEEKES-VAGLIANI, WINIFRED
  Women, food and rural development (5008)
Case studies in population policy: Nigeria (5006)
Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)
District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)
Final report: technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)
International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)
Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)
Rural housing problems (5002)
Women, food and rural development (5008)
INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE, OTTAWA, ON CA

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

INTERNATIONAL DEVELOPMENT RESEARCH CENTRE. INFORMATION SCIENCES DIVISION, OTTAWA, ON CA

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)

OECD. DEVELOPMENT CENTRE, PARIS FR

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)
Women, food and rural development (5008)

PUBLIC ADMINISTRATION SERVICE, MCLEAN, VA US

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)

UN. POPULATION DIVISION, NEW YORK, NY US

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

UNDP, NEW YORK, NY US

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)

UNIVERSITE DE CLERMONT I. CENTRE D'ETUDES ET DE RECHERCHES SUR LE DEVELOPPEMENT INTERNATIONAL, CLERMONT-FERRAND FR

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

UNIVERSITY OF IBADAN. DEPARTMENT OF LIBRARY STUDIES, IBADAN NG

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

UNIVERSITY OF SUSSEX. INSTITUTE OF DEVELOPMENT STUDIES, BRIGHTON GB

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)
CATALOGUING

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)

DEVELOPMENT ADMINISTRATION

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

DEVELOPMENT PLANS

Case studies in population policy: Nigeria (5006)

DEVISIS

International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

ECONOMIC AND SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT

International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

ECONOMIC POLICY

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

ECONOMIC RECESSION

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

FOOD PRODUCTION

Women, food and rural development (5008)

HOUSING

Rural housing problems (5002)
IDRC

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

INFORMATION ANALYSIS

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)

INFORMATION SYSTEMS

International socioeconomic information systems : an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

INTERNATIONAL ECONOMIC RELATIONS

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

MANAGEMENT DEVELOPMENT

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)

MANUALS

Manual for the preparation of records in development-information systems (5004)

PERSONNEL MANAGEMENT

Final report : technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)

POPULATION POLICY

Case studies in population policy : Nigeria (5006)

RURAL DEVELOPMENT

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

RURAL POPULATION

Rural housing problems (5002)
TRAINING PROGRAMMES

Final report: technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)

WOMEN'S ROLE

Women, food and rural development (5008)
AFRICA

International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

AFRICA SOUTH OF SAHARA

Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

BHUTAN

Final report: technical assistance in personnel management to the Government of Bhutan (5005)

BURKINA FASO

Women, food and rural development (5008)

CARIBBEAN

International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

LATIN AMERICA

International socioeconomic information systems: an evaluative study of DEVSIS-type programs (5003)

MALI

Women, food and rural development (5008)

NIGERIA

Case studies in population policy: Nigeria (5006)

SRI LANKA

District Integrated Rural Development Programme (5007)

Rural housing problems (5002)
LIBRARY PURCHASE ORDER

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Prentice-Hall of Canada
1870 Birchmount Road
Scarborough, ON
M1P 2J7
Canada

ORDER NUMBER: 51

History of psychology: main currents in psychological thought.
Leahey, T.
480 p.

NO. OF COPIES: 1       UNIT PRICE: 42.00 CAD

-------------------------

ORDER NUMBER: 52

Effective project planning and management: getting the job done.
Randolph, W.A.; Posner, B.Z.

NO. OF COPIES: 1       UNIT PRICE: 21.00 CAD

-------------------------

SHIP TO:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country
LIBRARY PURCHASE ORDER

ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Voluntary Health Association of India
C-14 Community Centre
Safdarjung Development Area
New Delhi 110 016
India

ORDER NUMBER: 46

Learning exercises for health training.
Zelmer, A.; Harnar, R.; Zelmer, L.
New Delhi : Voluntary Health Association of India, 1986

NO. OF COPIES: 3       UNIT PRICE: 76 rupees
TOTAL: 228 rupees

SHIP TO:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 13

ORDER CLAIM

--- Your institution’s name ---

PRENTICE-HALL OF CANADA
1870 BIRCHMOUNT ROAD
SCARBOROUGH, ON
M1P 2J7
CANADA

ORDER NUMBER: 51
ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

HISTORY OF PSYCHOLOGY: MAIN CURRENTS IN PSYCHOLOGICAL THOUGHT.
Leahey, T.
480 p.

NO. OF COPIES: 1 UNIT PRICE: 42.00 CAD

ORDER NUMBER: 52
ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

EFFECTIVE PROJECT PLANNING AND MANAGEMENT: GETTING THE JOB DONE.
Randolph, W.A.; Posner, B.Z.

NO. OF COPIES: 1 UNIT PRICE: 21.00 CAD

Our records show that this material has not yet been received.
Please indicate the status of this order below, and return to:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country
ORDER CLAIM

ORDER NUMBER: 46
ORDER DATE: 1994-05-06

Voluntary Health Association of India
C-14 Community Centre
Safdarjung Development Area
New Delhi 110 016
India

Learning exercises for health training.
Zelmer, A.; Harnar, R.; Zelmer, L.
New Delhi : Voluntary Health Association of India, 1986

NO. OF COPIES: 3
UNIT PRICE: 76 rupees
TOTAL: 228 rupees

Our records show that this material has not yet been received.
Please indicate the status of this order below, and return to:

your name
address line 1
address line 2
address line 3
country
ANNEX 19

EXAMPLE 14

CORPORATE NAME AUTHORITY FILE

AICARDES
SEE: Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social (34)

AICARDES
SEE: Association of Arab Research Institutes and Centres for Economic and Social Development (39)

Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social, Tunis TN (34)
OTHER LANG: Association of Arab Research Institutes and Centres for Economic and Social Development

Association of Arab Research Institutes and Centres for Economic and Social Development, Tunis TN (39)
OTHER LANG: Association des Instituts et Centres Arabes de Recherche pour le Développement Economique et Social

Caribbean Council for Science and Technology, Port of Spain TT (40)

Centre de Développement de l'OCDE
SEE: OCDE. Centre de Développement (16)

Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International, Ottawa, ON CA (5)
OTHER LANG: International Development Research Centre Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo

Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo, Ottawa, ON CA (6)
OTHER LANG: International Development Research Centre Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International

CIID
SEE: Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo (6)
Commonwealth Foundation, London GB (20)

COST
SEE: Caribbean Council for Science and Technology (40)

CRDI
SEE: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement International (5)

ECAFE, Bangkok TH (11)
SEE ALSO LATER NAME: ESCAP

ECLAC. Subregional Headquarters for the Caribbean, Port of Spain TT (21)

Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
SEE: ESCAP (3)

Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
SEE: ECAFE (11)

ESCAP, Bangkok TH (3)
SEE ALSO EARLIER NAME: ECAFE

IDRC
SEE: International Development Research Centre (2)

IDS
SEE: University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies (23)

International Development Research Centre, Ottawa, ON CA (2)
OTHER LANG: Centre de Recherches pour le Développement
International
Centro Internacional de Investigaciones para el Desarrollo

International Service for National Agricultural Research, The Hague NL (18)
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 14

ISNAR
SEE: International Service for National Agricultural Research (18)


OCDE, Paris FR (33)
OTHER LANG: OECD

OCDE. Centre de Développement, Paris FR (16)
OTHER LANG: OECD. Development Centre

OECD, Paris FR (32)
OTHER LANG: OCDE

OECD. Development Centre, Paris FR (12)
OTHER LANG: OCDE. Centre de Développement

Organisation de Coopération et de Développement Economiques
SEE: OCDE (33)

Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
SEE: OECD (32)

SAREC
SEE: Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries (19)

Swedish Agency for Research Cooperation with Developing Countries, Stockholm SE (19)

UN. Economic and Social Commission for Asia and the Pacific
SEE: ESCAP (3)

UN. Economic Commission for Asia and the Far East
SEE: ECAFE (11)
Université de Clermont I. Centre d’Etudes et de Recherches sur le Développement International, Clermont-Ferrand FR (43)

University of Sussex. Institute of Development Studies, Brighton GB (23)
ANNEX 19
EXAMPLE 15
SERIALS AUTHORITY FILE

Cahiers de la femme
SEE: Canadian woman studies (38)

Canadian woman studies (38)
ISSN: 0706-8204
FORMER TITLE: Canadian women's studies

Chronique OMS (26)
ISSN: 0373-3556
OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Crónica de la OMS

Crónica de la OMS (22)
ISSN: 0250-8591
OTHER LANG: WHO chronicle
Chronique OMS

WHO chronicle (35)
ISSN: 0042-9694
OTHER LANG: Crónica de la OMS
Chronique OMS

WHO offset publication (42)
Asian Productivity Organization (APRO)  
4-14 Akasaka 8-chome  
Minato-ku  
Tokyo  
Japan  

(MFN: 49)

University Bookshop (Nigeria) Limited (UNIB)  
University of Ibadan  
Ibadan  
Nigeria  

Agency for FAO publications.  
(MFN: 50)

Voluntary Health Association of India (VHAI)  
C-14 Community Centre  
Safdarjung Development Area  
New Delhi 110 016  
India  

(MFN: 14)
This annex describes the INMAGIC Plus implementation of the bibliographic database located on the diskette attached to this manual. Information is provided here on the sample database, the associated entry of data and retrieval of information, and the procedures to install and use the database. It is assumed that users are familiar with INMAGIC and its terminology.

CONTENTS

I COMMENTS ABOUT THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

II OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE

III INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER

IV THE SAMPLE APPLICATION
   1. List of fields in INMAGIC
   2. Variances from the Field-by-Field Guide
   3. List of records
   4. Passwords
   5. Modifying the data structures
   6. Order key

V DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION
   1. Passwords
   2. Validation

VI DISPLAYING INFORMATION ON YOUR SCREEN

VII REPORT GENERATION
   1. Differences between MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC
   2. Printed catalogues and current awareness bulletin
   3. Resequencing the data for printed bibliographic indexes
   4. Generating the printed bibliographic indexes
   5. Printing purchase orders and claims for overdue orders
   6. Modifying the reports

VIII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK

IX CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS

X INDEXING

XI SEARCHING

XII LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

43 INMAGIC Plus is a proprietary software product of Inmagic Inc., 2067 Massachusetts Avenue, Cambridge, MA 02140-1338, USA. It is referred to as INMAGIC throughout this manual.
I

COMMENTS ABOUT THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

The database defined using INMAGIC parallels that defined throughout this manual using MICRO-ISIS. INMAGIC was chosen to demonstrate an alternative implementation because it is a well-known and popular software in both developed and developing countries. The data in the INMAGIC database, called MIBIS, was actually generated from the MICRO-ISIS database (to avoid rekeying the data), using a special display format in MICRO-ISIS to prepare the data for use with INMAGIC.

The implementation is based on INMAGIC Plus version 1.0, release 4.0, for MS-DOS.

The differences between the two textual database systems require some changes to the way data are handled. Specifically:

- Lookups are not possible in INMAGIC. In place of authority records, all data are embedded directly into the INMAGIC MIBIS bibliographic records.
- Subfields are not supported (INMAGIC documentation sometimes refers to subfields, but uses the term to mean occurrences of a repeatable field). For the most part, data kept in subfields in MICRO-ISIS are combined into simple fields in INMAGIC, with appropriate punctuation placed within the data fields. In some cases, noted in Section IV: Sample application, data from subfielded fields in MICRO-ISIS have been split into multiple fields in INMAGIC.
- Only the first 50 fields defined in an INMAGIC database can be indexed (in INMAGIC, inversion is referred to as indexing). To accommodate this, the order of the fields in the INMAGIC definition has been altered from that in the MICRO-ISIS implementation.
- INMAGIC refers to fields by labels, which are required, and by names, which are optional. However, INMAGIC limits the total number of characters that can be used in the definition of field labels and names. The resulting labels are, therefore, very brief and sometimes not as descriptive as might be desired. In some cases, the field label has been supplemented by a field name. Whenever INMAGIC displays a field identifier, it uses the field name if one is present. Otherwise, the field label is displayed.
- INMAGIC does not support the use of triangular brackets to exclude certain leading articles from consideration in sorts. It does have its own facility, on the other hand, to exclude a select number of leading articles when a field is indexed or sorted as a term. The leading articles are defined with the database structure, and can be modified.\footnote{The INMAGIC default leading articles are used with the sample database. They are: a, an, the. If you wish to change the leading articles, you must do so for all thee database structures: MIBIS, TITLC, and MIBIS2.}
- INMAGIC does not support indexing terms delimited by triangular brackets.
- INMAGIC has no facility to test explicitly for the presence or absence of a field in a report definition. This affects the sorting and the formatting of the data.

The approach taken here to define an INMAGIC implementation that parallels the MICRO-ISIS implementation is not the way in which one would normally design a bibliographic system, and does not make best use of INMAGIC’s features and structure. To assist in designing INMAGIC applications, Inmagic Inc. has produced INMAGIC Plus: Library Guide,\footnote{INMAGIC Plus: Library Guide. Cambridge, MA, Inmagic Inc., 1992.} which includes techniques, suggestions, and models to handle cataloguing, acquisitions, serials control, and circulation.
II OVERVIEW OF THE CONTENTS OF THE DISKETTE

All information required for the INMAGIC implementation is located on the diskette, which contains one directory related to the INMAGIC implementation. This directory, called **INMAGIC**, contains the following databases:

- **MIBIS**, consisting of records that demonstrate most of the features described in this manual,
- **MIBIS2**, which is only used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes, and contains the appropriate records from MIBIS, but resequenced by Broad subject heading, and renumbered,
- **E-MIBIS2**, an empty database, which can be used to initialize MIBIS2,
- **TITLC**, which is only used to produce the title catalogue, and
- **E-TITLC**, an empty database, which can be used to initialize TITLC.

Report definitions, validation lookup files, and user search menus are provided in the same directory for use with MIBIS, MIBIS2, and TITLC.

III INSTALLATION ON YOUR MICROCOMPUTER

To use the sample application, you must copy the contents of directory INMAGIC to the directory on your hard disk that contains the INMAGIC system software.

There are references throughout this annex to optional changes to be made to the reports and the data structures. Whether the changes are applicable is determined by whether you are part of a formal information network and by the language(s) of the system. It is also expected that you may not require all the fields, or may wish to modify the sample implementation in other ways to suit your particular needs.

With one exception, you need not make any of the changes suggested. The exception applies for the exchange of data in a formal information network. In this case, you must make the indicated changes to the exchange report (see Section VIII: Exchanging data in a formal information network).

Note If you have developed an INMAGIC application using the first edition of this manual, and wish to update this application using the definitions for this edition, proceed as follows:

- In the Auxiliary menu (or Auxiliary environment in INMAGIC 7.x), write the complete database to a file, sorting on field **REC**.
- Using an ASCII editor or a wordprocessor, change the following field labels:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>from</th>
<th>to</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRTS</td>
<td>PRT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LOC</td>
<td>L</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>PREC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRICE</td>
<td>PR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

When changing these field labels, always search for the name preceded by a carriage return and followed by a space to avoid changing similar character combinations elsewhere in the data. For example, to change LEVEL to LV, search for "[enter]LEVEL " and replace this with "[enter]LV ".

- Import the modified file using the import command in the Utilities menu.

IV. THE SAMPLE APPLICATION

1 List of Fields in INMAGIC

The following table describes the fields defined in the INMAGIC database called MIBIS, and their corresponding field tags defined in this manual for MICRO-ISIS. They are listed in the order in which they are defined in the MIBIS data structure.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field label</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>MICRO-ISIS tag</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Indexing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REC</td>
<td>MFN</td>
<td><em>T 2</em></td>
<td>Record number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PC</td>
<td>001</td>
<td><em>T 2</em></td>
<td>Participating centre acronym</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RS</td>
<td>RSTAT</td>
<td>003</td>
<td>Record status</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>E</td>
<td>EDATE</td>
<td>005</td>
<td>Date record entered</td>
<td>T 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LV</td>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>007</td>
<td>Bibliographic level, and</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>008</td>
<td>Bibliographic level — parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CO</td>
<td>CNTRY</td>
<td>009</td>
<td>Country of origin</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>020</td>
<td></td>
<td>Language of analysis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT</td>
<td>021</td>
<td><em>T 2</em></td>
<td>Language(s) of text</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>022</td>
<td></td>
<td>Language(s) of summaries</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td>TITLE</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>Title</td>
<td><em>Y 5</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td>PTITLE</td>
<td>101</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
<td><em>Y 5</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU</td>
<td>AUTHOR</td>
<td>110</td>
<td>Personal author(s)</td>
<td>T 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAU</td>
<td>CAUTHOR</td>
<td>111</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td><em>Y 5</em></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

46 Indexing techniques used:

- _T_ = complete term,
- _K_ = keyword,
- _Y_ = both complete term and keyword,
- _2_ = treat numeric characters as numbers, leading articles are significant,
- _3_ = ignore punctuation and leading articles,
- _5_ = ignore leading articles, consecutive punctuation is treated as a space,
- _6_ = text is inverted as is, and lower and upper case is significant, and
- _7_ = like _5_, but does not ignore leading articles.
### Annex 20: Implementation using INMAGIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field label</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>MICRO-ISIS tag</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Indexing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>AFFIL</td>
<td>112</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td>K 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>OTHINST</td>
<td>113</td>
<td>Other associated institution(s)</td>
<td>K 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>MEET</td>
<td>114</td>
<td>Meeting(s)(^\text{47})</td>
<td>Y 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MISOD</td>
<td></td>
<td>114(^e)</td>
<td>Meeting date — ISO form</td>
<td>T 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ED</td>
<td></td>
<td>120</td>
<td>Edition</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUB</td>
<td></td>
<td>121</td>
<td>Publisher</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D</td>
<td>PDATE</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>Date of publication/issue — free form</td>
<td>T 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISOD</td>
<td></td>
<td>123</td>
<td>Date of publication/issue — ISO form</td>
<td>T 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COL</td>
<td></td>
<td>130</td>
<td>Collation (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRT</td>
<td></td>
<td>131</td>
<td>Part statement</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MS</td>
<td></td>
<td>140</td>
<td>Monographic series</td>
<td>K 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRJ</td>
<td></td>
<td>142(^a)</td>
<td>Project name(s)</td>
<td>K 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PRJNO</td>
<td></td>
<td>142(^b)</td>
<td>Project number(s)</td>
<td>T 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISBN</td>
<td></td>
<td>160</td>
<td>ISBN(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DOC</td>
<td></td>
<td>161</td>
<td>Document number(s)</td>
<td>T 6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>STITLE</td>
<td>200</td>
<td>Title of serial</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td></td>
<td>201</td>
<td>ISSN</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TP</td>
<td>TPRN</td>
<td>202</td>
<td>Title of parent (M/C)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AP</td>
<td>APRN</td>
<td>210</td>
<td>Personal author(s) — parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CP</td>
<td>CPRN</td>
<td>211</td>
<td>Corporate author(s) — parent</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>300</td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>301</td>
<td>Secondary descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>302</td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>303</td>
<td>Local descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>XDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>304</td>
<td>Proposed descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AB</td>
<td>ABSTRACT</td>
<td>310</td>
<td>Abstract</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td></td>
<td>320</td>
<td>Broad subject heading</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PS</td>
<td>PSTAT</td>
<td>400</td>
<td>Processing status</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>L</td>
<td>LOCATION</td>
<td>410</td>
<td>Location(s)</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\(^{47}\) Derived from field 114, using data in all subfields except subfield e.
### Annex 20: Implementation Using INMAGIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field label</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>MICRO-ISIS tag</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Indexing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CALLNO</td>
<td>Call number</td>
<td>411</td>
<td>Call number</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MT</td>
<td>MTYPE</td>
<td>420</td>
<td>Type of material</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AT</td>
<td>ATYPE</td>
<td>500</td>
<td>Acquisition type</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OD</td>
<td>ODATE</td>
<td>510</td>
<td>Date ordered</td>
<td>T 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CD</td>
<td>CLAIMD</td>
<td>511</td>
<td>Date claimed</td>
<td>T 3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RECD</td>
<td>512</td>
<td>Date received</td>
<td>T 3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RQ</td>
<td>514</td>
<td>Requester(s)</td>
<td>T 7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNAM</td>
<td>515^a</td>
<td>Supplier name</td>
<td>Y 5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SADD</td>
<td>515</td>
<td>Supplier address</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>O</td>
<td>OCOPIES</td>
<td>513</td>
<td>Number of copies ordered</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PR</td>
<td>PRICE</td>
<td>516</td>
<td>Price</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANOTE</td>
<td>517</td>
<td>Acquisition notes</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>C</td>
<td>COPIES</td>
<td>412</td>
<td>Number of copies</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ANO</td>
<td>ACCESSION</td>
<td>413</td>
<td>Accession number(s)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>A</td>
<td>AVAIL</td>
<td>162</td>
<td>Availability</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TH</td>
<td>THESIS</td>
<td>141</td>
<td>Thesis</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>NOTES</td>
<td>150</td>
<td>Notes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TE</td>
<td>TRTE</td>
<td>102</td>
<td>Translated title — English</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TF</td>
<td>TRTF</td>
<td>103</td>
<td>Translated title — French</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TS</td>
<td>TRTS</td>
<td>104</td>
<td>Translated title — Spanish</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TO</td>
<td>TRTO</td>
<td>105</td>
<td>Translated title — other language</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPRN</td>
<td>010</td>
<td>Record number of parent</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RPART</td>
<td>011</td>
<td>Record number(s) of part(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ROLAN</td>
<td>012</td>
<td>Record number(s) of other language version(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INIT</td>
<td>430</td>
<td>Documentalist(s)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CH</td>
<td>CHDATE</td>
<td>006</td>
<td>Date record changed</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PREC</td>
<td>002</td>
<td>Participating centre record number</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

48 Derived from field 515, using data in all subfields except subfield a.
ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

2 Variances from the Field-by-Field Guide

The following table describes the changes that were made to the fields in INMAGIC from the definitions used in MICRO-ISIS and described in the Field-by-Field Guide. These changes were made to accommodate the operating requirements of INMAGIC.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>MICRO-ISIS field</th>
<th>Change made, and reason</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>007 Bibliographic</td>
<td>The two fields are combined into one in INMAGIC to allow for slightly more room for indexed fields in the database definition. Valid entries for this field are: AM, AC, AS, M, MC, MS, C, and CS.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>008 level</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>114 Meeting(s)</td>
<td>This field has been split into two in INMAGIC, called MEET and MISOD. The ISO-format date (subfield e in MICRO-ISIS) is kept in MISOD. This improves both the presentation of the meeting information in the printed outputs and allows for indexing of the date.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>142 Project(s)</td>
<td>This field has been split into two in INMAGIC, called PRJ and PRJNO. The project name (subfield a in MICRO-ISIS) is kept in PRJ, and the number (subfield b in MICRO-ISIS) in PRJNO. This allows for indexing by project number.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>300 Descriptors</td>
<td>Descriptors are kept between triangular brackets in MICRO-ISIS. To properly index them in INMAGIC, each descriptor is kept in a separate occurrence of the appropriate field.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>301</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>302</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>303</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>304</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515 Supplier</td>
<td>This field has been implemented as two fields in INMAGIC. The contents of subfield a (supplier name) are kept in the INMAGIC field SNAM, and the contents of subfields b through e (address lines and country) are kept as separate occurrences of the INMAGIC field SADD. This allows for the indexing of the supplier name, and the proper formatting of the supplier name and address in the purchase orders and order claims.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>515</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

As well, data from all other fields that are subfielded in MICRO-ISIS are combined, with appropriate punctuation separating the original subfields, into simple fields in INMAGIC. For example, the Publisher (field PUB) contains the place, country code and publisher name. Therefore, this information always appears together in outputs containing the Publisher field.

Similarly, information from authority records in MICRO-ISIS is entered directly into the bibliographic records in INMAGIC.

Although five databases are defined, you will work mostly with MIBIS. All bibliographic records are maintained in this database. Database MIBIS2 is only used to produce printed bibliographic indexes, and database TITLC is used to print the title catalogue. E-MIBIS2 is used to initialize MIBIS2, and E-TITLC is used to initialize TITLC.
3 List of Records

The MIBIS database contains 25 records, which match the 25 bibliographic records contained in the MICRO-ISIS sample database. For convenience, the retrieval key field, REC, has been given values corresponding to the MFN numbers of the records in MICRO-ISIS. The records are:

REC 1 Monograph from a collection (English-language version)
REC 7 Article from a periodical
REC 8 Monograph
REC 9 Monograph (conference proceedings)
REC 10 Chapter from a monograph
REC 13 Monograph
REC 15 Monograph with translated title
REC 17 Collection with parallel title (conference proceedings)
REC 24 Monograph from a collection (French-language version)
REC 25 Monograph
REC 27 Chapter from a monograph
REC 28 Collection
REC 29 Chapter from a collection
REC 30 Article from a periodical
REC 31 Monograph with parallel title
REC 36 Monograph in a monographic series
REC 37 Monograph
REC 41 Monograph in a monographic series
REC 44 Monograph (thesis)
REC 45 Monograph (United Nations document)
REC 46 Acquisitions record
REC 47 Article from a periodical
REC 48 Article from a periodical
REC 51 Acquisitions record
REC 52 Acquisitions record

4 Passwords

Passwords are defined in database MIBIS to limit access to fields used for data entry and modification (see Section V: Data entry and modification). An empty password provides unrestricted access to the database. The passwords are:

master password: MASTER

data entry passwords: MIBIS, PARTM, PARTS, ACQIS

general access password: empty (just press [enter])

No passwords are defined for MIBIS2 or TITLC.

The master password is required to modify the data structure. The general access password (which is an empty password — just press [enter] when prompted) is used for everything else, except data entry.
5 Modifying the Data Structures

You may wish to modify the database definitions to suit your particular needs. INMAGIC databases can only be modified in certain ways. It is not possible to change a field label, delete it, or move it, once it has been defined. Therefore, you may need to rebuild the definition from scratch. Be sure to first print the definition provided as a guide. If desired, preserve the data in the sample database in an external file, by selecting the Auxiliary menu, then selecting Export, and finally specifying All. Provide the full name of file: DATA.TXT

In particular, you may wish to make the following changes to the database definitions:

- If you are not part of a formal information network, you can remove the Record status (field RSTAT), its validation rule, and its validation lookup table, RECSTAT.VAL.
- If you are implementing a unilingual system, you can remove the Language of analysis (field LA). If, however, you will also be exporting records to a multilingual system, you must also create an entry for the Language of analysis (field LA) in the report, called EXCHANGE, used to reformat the data for the purpose of exchanging it (see Section VIII: Exchanging data in a formal information network).

When making changes, you may also have to make changes to the definitions for MIBIS2 and TITLC, and to the reports (see Section VII, part 6), search prompt files, and validation files. Finally, you should rebuild the databases (file specifications) by deleting them in DOS, and rebuilding them in the Define menu of INMAGIC. However, take care to first save the validation rules, which are kept with the file specifications, by pressing [Alt-W] within the Validation screen. The following table shows the correspondence between the data structures and the file specifications:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data structure</th>
<th>File specification</th>
<th>DOS filenames</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>MIBIS</td>
<td>MIBIS</td>
<td>MIBIS.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MIBIS2</td>
<td>MIBIS2</td>
<td>MIBIS2.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E-MIBIS2</td>
<td>E-MIBIS2.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TITLC</td>
<td>TITLC</td>
<td>TITLC.*</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>E-TITLC</td>
<td>E-TITLC.*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The data structures for MIBIS2 and TITLC are based on the data structure for MIBIS, but do not contain any fields that are not needed in the reports produced from them. As well, indexing has been reduced to the minimum needed to sort the appropriate fields for the reports. If preferred, the data structure for MIBIS could be used for all the databases, but more disk space would be required, and the loading of data in the Utilities menu would take longer.

---

49 Refer to “About INMAGIC Files” in Chapter 9 of the Inmagic Plus User's Manual. In particular, the database structure and files can have filename extensions STR, DAT, DIC, DTM, DCM, and DQM.
6 Order Key

Many of the printed outputs require a final sort by title. For this reason, field Title has been specified as the order key in the data structures for MIBIS. INMAGIC will automatically sequence the data using the title if all other fields on which the data are sorted are the same. For example, in an author catalogue, two items by the same author will be sorted under that author by their title. The order key feature of INMAGIC is an extra index that allows this final sort to be produced more efficiently than could be done otherwise. However, it only operates if 2 500 or fewer records are selected. Should a larger report be produced, the secondary sort on field Title must be requested in the PRINT command in the Report menu.

Similarly, the order key for database MIBIS2 is field REC to properly sequence the records in index reports.

No order key is specified for database TITLC.

V DATA ENTRY AND MODIFICATION

1 Passwords

Passwords have been defined with the MIBIS database to restrict the fields accessible to the data entry operator. Only those fields applicable to the type of material being described (or the information necessary for acquisitions) are given CHANGE access. Four data entry passwords are defined that match the four data entry worksheets available in MICRO-ISIS for bibliographic records. They are:

- **MIBIS**: Supply this password to enter or modify a record describing a monograph or collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level M, MC, MS, C, or CS).
- **PARTM**: Supply this password to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a monograph or a collection (i.e., a record with bibliographic level AM or AC).
- **PARTS**: Supply this password to enter or modify a record describing an analytic from a serial (i.e., a record with bibliographic level AS).
- **ACQIS**: Supply this password to enter or modify an acquisitions record, regardless of its bibliographic level.

Examples of how to use the data entry passwords

1. A monograph is ordered, received, and catalogued by your centre:

   When ordering the item, use **ACQIS** to enter the basic bibliographic and acquisitions information for the monograph.

   When the item is received, use **ACQIS** to update Processing status (field PSTAT), Date received (field RECD), and other information as appropriate.

   Use **MIBIS** to complete the descriptive cataloguing and add the call number, descriptors, abstract, etc.
ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

2. Your centre has received a copy of a conference proceedings that has already been catalogued as a monograph. You now wish to add records describing individual papers of particular interest to your centre:

Use PARTM to enter a bibliographic record for each paper to be described.

Use MIBIS to update the record for the conference proceedings (i.e., the parent record) to add the appropriate REC values in Record number(s) of part(s) (field RPART).

2 Validation

Some validation has been defined for data entry for the MIBIS database. This is meant to be indicative only — it is expected that you will wish to modify this to suit your requirements.

To change the validation rules, select the Define menu, then select Validation. Request database MIBIS and provide the password MASTER.

In some fields, only a select number of entries are valid. The following table lists the fields on which lookups are performed, and the name of the lookup file. The lookup files provided consist of valid entries taken from the Field-by-Field Guide, the appropriate annexes, or the sample database itself. To change any of these tables, use an ASCII editor, or a word processor that can save the text in ASCII.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field</th>
<th>Lookup File</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>RSTAT</td>
<td>RECSTAT.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LEVEL</td>
<td>LEVEL.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CNTRY</td>
<td>COUNTRY.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LA</td>
<td>LANGUAGE.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LT</td>
<td>LANGUAGE.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LS</td>
<td>LANGUAGE.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td>SUBJECT.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PSTAT</td>
<td>PROCSTAT.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MTYPE</td>
<td>MTYPE.VAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ATYPE</td>
<td>ATYPE.VAL</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VI DISPLAYING INFORMATION ON YOUR SCREEN

Reports have been defined to display selected information on your screen. These parallel similar reports provided to produce printed outputs (see Section VII), but with page-heading information removed, and pauses inserted between screens. The reports provided are:

M The information shown is similar to that provided with the printed catalogues.

MA is identical to M, but also displays the abstract.
Both reports display the Processing status (field PSTAT), so you can tell at what stage the items are in the ordering and cataloguing cycle.

**VII REPORT GENERATION**

A number of reports have been predefined. As much as possible, they match the predefined reports provided in MICRO-ISIS (see Section XII of Annex 19 for printed outputs using the sample database in MICRO-ISIS). The following reports are provided:

- **printed catalogues**, which, with the exception of the title catalogue, are produced directly from the main sample database, MIBIS (the title catalogue is printed from the TITLC database);
- **a current awareness bulletin**, also produced directly from MIBIS;
- **a main bibliographic index**, produced from the MIBIS2 database (MIBIS2 is a temporary database created using selected records from MIBIS, which are resequenced by Broad subject heading (field SUB), and then renumbered);
- **other indexes** that refer to the main bibliographic index, also produced from MIBIS2; and
- **purchase orders** and **claims** for overdue orders, produced from MIBIS.

The sample reports are not included in this annex, because they are similar to those in Annex 19. However, you can print the sample reports directly using the steps outlined in this section.

All predefined reports are designed for use with a printer. If necessary, a report can be cancelled by pressing [esc].

The following provides more information on the reports.

1 **Differences between MICRO-ISIS and INMAGIC**

MICRO-ISIS makes a distinction in how records are formatted (as defined in display formats), and how these records are combined with headings, etc. and laid out on a page (as defined using system worksheets). The two aspects are defined together in a report in INMAGIC. Therefore, separate reports need to be defined for use with screen displays and with printed outputs. MICRO-ISIS also uses system worksheets to define the sorting requirements to produce a report, whereas INMAGIC requires the user to specify the sort commands every time a report is required. Furthermore, INMAGIC sometimes appends a space after the last occurrence of a field — this cannot be suppressed. This results in unusual punctuation. For example, in record REC=1, an extra space appears after ISIS in:

ISIS ; MINISIS
2 Printed Catalogues and Current Awareness Bulletin

2.1 Selecting the data to be printed

Normally, to produce the current awareness bulletin, you would request a search on the Processing status (field PSTAT) for records with the status value LIST. Similarly, to produce the printed catalogues, search for records with the Processing status LIST or CAT. However, you may need to further qualify these searches to eliminate records for which no information is provided in the field on which the data are to be sorted. For example, the corporate author catalogue must only be produced using records with one or more entries in the Corporate author field (CAUTHOR). This requires a further search in the Search menu, which must be combined, using AND, with the search described above. Otherwise, records that do not contain data in the field on which they are sorted will appear at the beginning of the report. Because INMAGIC has no facility to explicitly test for the presence of a field in a record, a generalized search expression is required, namely, *.

Predefined user search menus are provided to simplify selecting the data to be printed. These can be requested on the Search menu using [F8]. Therefore, you should use the following keystrokes in the Search menu to retrieve the appropriate data for the reports:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Search menu keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author catalogue</td>
<td>[F8], AUTHC, [enter], *. [tab], LIST,CAT, [enter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title catalogue</td>
<td>[F8], TITLC, [enter], *. [tab], LIST,CAT, [enter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author catalogue</td>
<td>[F8], CORPC, [enter], *. [tab], LIST,CAT, [enter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting catalogue</td>
<td>[F8], MEETC, [enter], *. [tab], LIST,CAT, [enter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current awareness bulletin</td>
<td>[F8], CAB, [enter], *. [tab], LIST, [enter]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

2.2 Sorting and printing the selected records

The following table shows the keystrokes to use, starting in the Search menu, to produce the desired report using the records selected above:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Search and Report menu keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Author catalogue</td>
<td>Report, Sort, AUTHOR, [enter], Explode, Format, AUTHC, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title catalogue</td>
<td>Report, Format, TITLC1, [enter], Write, TITLC.TXT, [enter], Overwrite</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate author catalogue</td>
<td>Report, Sort, CAUTHOR, [enter], Explode, Format, CORPC, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Meeting catalogue</td>
<td>Report, Sort, MEET, [enter], Explode, Format, MEETC, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Current awareness bulletin</td>
<td>Report, Sort, SUB, [enter], Format, CAB, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If more than 2 500 records are being printed in any of the above reports except the title catalogue, add the keystrokes sUbsort, TITLE, and [enter] before Format.
Example

For a large author catalogue, use the following keystrokes:

   Report, Sort, AUTHOR, [enter], Explode, sUbsort, TITLE, [enter], Format,
   AUTHC, [enter], Print

2.3 Further processing required to produce the title catalogue

The title catalogue requires a few extra steps to produce because INMAGIC cannot merge two sort fields in the Report menu. On the other hand, the Auxiliary menu, in which a merge is possible, does not allow one to report from a subset of the database. Therefore, the steps outlined above copy records selected in the Search menu to a temporary file called TITLC.TXT. This file can then be loaded into a database called TITLC, from which the title catalogue can be printed. The following steps complete the process to print the title catalogue:

- Exit from INMAGIC.
- In DOS, initialize the TITLC database with the following DOS command, over-writing the contents of the TITLC database, if present:

  COPY E-TITLC.* TITLC.*

- In INMAGIC, to load the TITLC database, specify the following keystrokes starting from the Main menu:

  Utilities, Import, Database, TITLC, [enter], File to import, TITLC.TXT, [enter], Go

- In INMAGIC, to print the title catalogue using the TITLC database, specify the following keystrokes starting from the Main menu:

  Open database, TITLC, [enter], Auxiliary, Sort, TITLE, [enter], Merge, PTITLE, [enter], Format, TITLC2, [enter], Print

The title catalogue is now printed. To delete the temporary files used to hold the data copied from MIBIS to TITLC:

- Exit INMAGIC.
- In DOS, execute the following DOS commands:

  ERASE TITLC.TXT
  ERASE TITLC.D*

2.4 Variation from the MICRO-ISIS report

All the reports except the current awareness bulletin are similar in INMAGIC and MICRO-ISIS. The current awareness bulletin is printed as a single column report, because INMAGIC has no facility to produce multi-column printed output.

3 Resequencing the Data for Printed Bibliographic Indexes

The bibliographic records to be used in the printed bibliographic indexes must first be sorted by Broad subject heading (field SUB), and within that by Title (field TITLE). They are then printed with new reference numbers assigned sequentially to them. INMAGIC has no direct
means of renumbering records after they have been sorted.\textsuperscript{50} To produce the desired printed bibliographic indexes, the records must be placed into a second database after they have been sorted. Variable REC must contain the new record numbers in this second database, called MIBIS2. The values in REC are then used as the sequential numbers assigned to the material in the main bibliographic index, and referenced in the other printed bibliographic indexes (see examples 6 to 11 in Section XII of Annex 19).

To resequence the data, you must perform the following steps:

- In DOS, initialize the MIBIS2 database with the following DOS command, overwriting the files if they are present:

  \texttt{COPY E-MIBIS2.* MIBIS2.*}

- In INMAGIC, using the MIBIS database, create file RENUMBER.TXT containing the records to be loaded into the MIBIS2 database, using the following keystrokes in the Search menu:

  \texttt{[F8], RENUMBER, [enter], *, [tab], LIST, [enter], Report, Sort, SUB, [enter], sUbsort, TITLE, [enter], Format, RENUMBER, [enter], Write, RENUMBER.TXT, [enter]}

The keystrokes sUbsort, TITLE, [enter] are not required if fewer than 2500 records are selected.

\textbf{Note} You may wish to modify the MAINI user search menu, or use keystrokes different from *, [tab], list, [enter].

Specify Overwrite if asked.

When asked, supply the starting record number for the resequenced database.

- Exit the Search menu.

- Load database MIBIS2 with the records in file RENUMBER.TXT, using the following keystrokes in the Utilities menu:

  Import, Database, MIBIS2, [enter], File to import, RENUMBER.TXT, [enter], Go

- Exit INMAGIC.

- In DOS, execute the following DOS command:

  \texttt{ERASE RENUMBER.TXT}

The MIBIS2 database can now be used to produce the printed bibliographic indexes.

4 Generating the Printed Bibliographic Indexes

You can produce the main bibliographic index and other printed bibliographic indexes anytime after you have created the resequenced MIBIS2 database. You can print any bibliographic

\textsuperscript{50} INMAGIC does allow records to be numbered as they are printed. This would be adequate to produce the main bibliographic index, but would not allow one to refer to these new numbers in the other bibliographic indexes.
ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

index using the Auxiliary menu, so long as you ensure that MIBIS2 is the active database. In the Auxiliary menu, you must first specify the sort to be performed, and then request the report. The following table shows the keystrokes to use in the Auxiliary menu to produce the desired index report.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Auxiliary menu keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Main bibliographic index</td>
<td>Sort, SUB, [enter], Format, MAINI, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Author index</td>
<td>Sort, AUTHOR, [enter], Format, AUTHI, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Title index</td>
<td>Sort, TITLE, [enter], Merge, PTITLE, Format, TITLI, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Corporate body index</td>
<td>Sort, CAUTHOR, [enter], Merge, AFFIL, [enter], Merge, OTHINST, [enter], Format, CORPI, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Subject index</td>
<td>Sort, PDES, [enter], Format, SUBJI, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geographic index</td>
<td>Sort, GDES, [enter], Format, GEOGI, [enter], Print</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are printing several of the bibliographic index reports in one session, you may have to leave the Auxiliary menu, and then return to it, to clear the settings for each new report.

When all the printed bibliographic indexes have been produced, you can erase the files associated with MIBIS2, to free up disk space. Use the DOS command:

`ERASE MIBIS2.D*`

4.1 Variations from the MICRO-ISIS bibliographic indexes

With two exceptions, the bibliographic indexes produced are the same using INMAGIC and MICRO-ISIS. The exceptions are:

1. The main bibliographic index does not include information found in the following fields:
   
   - Record number of parent (field RPRN)
   - Record number(s) of part(s) (field RPART)
   - Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field ROLAN)

   This is because there is no means to determine what these numbers are in the resequenced database in INMAGIC.

   As well, this index is printed in a single column, because INMAGIC cannot produce a multi-column report directly.

2. The corporate author index cannot be produced in an identical fashion because the corporate body fields (corporate author(s), affiliation, and other associated

---

51 In INMAGIC, the Auxiliary menu is used to print reports that use all the records in the database, as is the case for the printed bibliographic indexes (using database MIBIS2). The Search and Report menus are used to print records selected from a search.
institution(s)) contain slightly different data. In MICRO-ISIS, only subfields a, b, c, and d (Main body, Sub-body, Place, and Country code) are used to sort the information in the report, and are printed as headings. In INMAGIC, the complete field is used. This includes the Role information (subfield e) kept in the Other associated institution(s) field. Therefore, the role is printed with the heading, which sometimes results in more than one entry for the same corporate body.

Example

OECD. DEVELOPMENT CENTRE, PARIS FR  
Women, food and rural development (5008)

OECD. DEVELOPMENT CENTRE, PARIS FR (SPONSOR)  
Crisis and recovery in Subsaharan Africa (5001)

5 Printing Purchase Orders and Claims for Overdue Orders

Two predefined reports are provided to print purchase orders and claims for overdue orders.

Before using the supplied reports the first time, modify them to reflect your organization’s requirements. In particular, you should provide your institution’s name and address in the following lines:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>File name</th>
<th>Lines to change</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchase orders</td>
<td>ORDER.FMO</td>
<td>E/2, E/25 to E/29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claim for overdue orders</td>
<td>CLAIM.FMO</td>
<td>E/2, E/27 to E/31</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If you are changing the number of lines in the report, ensure that the reference to the LINE SAME command (E/22 in ORDER.FMO and E/23 in CLAIM.FMO) is adjusted as required.

To print purchase orders and claims for overdue orders, you should select the acquisitions records to be printed in the Search menu of INMAGIC. Select records with Processing status (field PSTAT) set to ORD. Use the following keystrokes in the Search menu to select the items to print:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Search menu keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchase orders</td>
<td>[F8], ORDER, [enter], ORD, [enter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claim for overdue orders</td>
<td>[F8], CLAIM, [enter], ORD, [tab], &gt;, [a date in ISO format], [enter]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note  You may wish to change the user search menus for the purchase orders and claim for overdue orders, or the search values to be entered using the user search menus. The search described above for the purchase orders selects all those records with Processing status (field PSTAT) set to ORD, and with no value present in the Date ordered (field ODATE). For claims for overdue books, specify a date in ISO format for the Date ordered (field ODATE) and the Date claimed (field CLAIMD). Select the date in such a manner that you will not be sending a claim to a supplier for an item recently ordered or recently claimed.
It is also necessary to set today’s date in ISO format in one field in the database before printing the report. After having identified the records, continue with the following keystrokes to set the Date ordered (field ODATE) for purchase orders or the Date claimed (field CLAIMD) for claims for overdue orders:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Modification keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchase orders</td>
<td>Modify, ODATE, [enter], Last, [enter], Append,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[enter], [today’s date in ISO format], [F2], Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claim for overdue orders</td>
<td>Modify, CLAIMD, [enter], Last, [enter], Append,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[enter], [today’s date in ISO format], [F2], Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The report can now be printed. Continue by entering the following keystrokes:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Report</th>
<th>Print keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Purchase orders</td>
<td>Report, Sort, SNAM, [enter], sUbsort, REC, [enter], Format, ORDER,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[enter], Print</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Claim for overdue orders</td>
<td>Report, Sort, SNAM, [enter], sUbsort, REC, [enter], Format, CLAIM,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>[enter], Print</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note 1 The two predefined reports are formatted differently than the reports shown in Annex 19. Limitations in INMAGIC prevent the grouping of multiple orders to the same supplier on the same page, as laid out in CDS/ISIS. The purchase orders and claims for overdue orders are, therefore, laid out one item to a page. The pages are sorted by supplier. If you wish, you can restrict the search in the ORDER and CLAIM user search menus to a specific supplier.

Note 2 You may wish to change the picture format item used to display the total cost (line E/23 in ORDER.FMO and line E/24 in CLAIM.FMO) and, if appropriate, add a constant value for the currency. INMAGIC has no capability to change the formatting dynamically for various currencies.

6 Modifying the Reports

Modifying the reports to suit your own needs is straight-forward in INMAGIC. If you have modified the data structures for the databases from which the reports are produced, you may need to modify the reports. This may not always be possible from the compiled report. Therefore, you may wish to write the reports to a file before any changes are made to the data structures. Do this by requesting the report in the Define menu, and pressing [Alt-W]. After the data structures are modified, you can use the file (ASCII) version of the report by requesting a new report, and then specifying the report name preceded by an “@” character. For example, to modify the author catalogue report, specify @AUTHC and respond with a “Y” when asked if it is OK to replace the existing definition.

If you plan to change the line width in any report, you may have to adjust the second value in COLUMN commands in that report. Also ensure that any references to specific lines in a report, using the LINE SAME command, remain correct if you insert or delete lines in a report.
VIII EXCHANGING DATA IN A FORMAL INFORMATION NETWORK

1 Preparing the Conversion Report

A report, called EXCHANGE, is provided to enable participating centres (PCs) to exchange data with the coordinating centre (CC). It must be customized for use with a particular PC as follows:

1. The PC acronym must be entered in place of the word “acronym” in lines E/1 and E/3.

   In line E/1, the acronym is used to help create a unique identifier (field REC) for use at the CC. The unique identifier in this case is the acronym of the PC and the value of REC. Your own network may select other methods of assigning unique identifiers to records.

   In line E/3, it is used to provide the value for the Participating centre acronym (field PC).

Example

change the lines:

   E/1 REC, BEGIN 'REC acronym'
   E/3 'PC acronym'

   to:

   E/1 REC, BEGIN 'REC CODESRIA'
   E/3 'PC CODESRIA'

where CODESRIA is the acronym of the PC.

Therefore, CODESRIA’s record with REC set to 57 will be assigned the value CODESRIA57 for REC in the CC’s database.

2. Whenever records from a unilingual system are being exported to a multilingual system, the language code corresponding to the language of the system must be entered as text in the report definition in line E/7. This language code will be assigned to the Language of analysis (field LA) in the records in the CC’s consolidated database.

Example

change the line:

   E/7 LA

to:

   E/7 'LA Fr'
2 Sending Data to the Coordinating Centre

To send completed catalogue records to the CC, perform the following steps:

- Using the MIBIS database, in the Search menu, select the records to be sent to the CC. These are the records with Record status (field RSTAT) set to N. Use the following keystrokes:
  
  \[ F8, EXCHANGE, [enter], N, [enter] \]

- Write the file to a diskette (drive A: is assumed), using the following keystrokes:
  
  Report, Sort, REC, [enter], Format, EXCHANGE, [enter], Write, A:EXCHANGE.TXT, [enter]

The sort keystrokes, Sort, REC, [enter], are optional, but, if used, will ensure that the records are output in record number order.

This procedure will create a file on diskette called EXCHANGE.TXT.

Note 1 Data has not been entered in the Record status (field RSTAT) in the sample database.

Note 2 The Record status (field RSTAT) should be set to S after the report is produced. See Section IX: Changing the contents of the status fields for details.

3 Special Consideration

When the coordinating centre (CC) receives records from a participating centre, INMAGIC cannot determine what values belong in fields Record number of Parent (field RPRN), Record number(s) of part(s) (field RPART), or Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field ROLAN). As well, INMAGIC cannot determine whether the related record (e.g., the record describing the parent) is included in the records sent to the CC. For example, if CODESRIA’s record 57 contains the value 56 in RPRN, INMAGIC cannot determine if CODESRIA’s record 56 is included in the CC’s database. Similarly, INMAGIC also cannot change the value in this field in record 57 to CODESRIA56. The INMAGIC implementation avoids the difficulty by excluding fields RPRN, RPART, and ROLAN from the EXCHANGE report.

IX CHANGING THE CONTENTS OF THE STATUS FIELDS

After the current awareness bulletin or printed bibliographic indexes have been produced, the Processing status (field PSTAT) should be changed from LIST to CAT. Similarly, after records have been sent to the CC for the network, the Record status (field RSTAT) should be changed from N to S.

INMAGIC provides a modify option in the Search menu to enable one to readily make the same change in one field in several records. Therefore, to change the Processing status from LIST to CAT, or the Record status from N to S, enter the following keystrokes from the Search menu:
ANNEX 20: IMPLEMENTATION USING INMAGIC

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Required change in status</th>
<th>Search menu keystrokes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Processing status to CAT</td>
<td>[F8], STATUS, [enter], LIST, [enter], Modify, PSTAT, [enter], A, [enter], [enter], CAT, [enter], [F2], Y, [enter]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Record status to S</td>
<td>[F8], STATUS, [enter], [tab], N, [enter], Modify, RSTAT, [enter], A, [enter], [enter], S, [enter], [F2], Y, [enter]</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The database is now updated, with the appropriate status field changed.

X INDEXING

The rules for the indexing of data are defined with the fields in the data structures for the databases MIBIS, MIBIS2, and TITLC. INMAGIC requires the retrieval key field (REC in this case) to be indexed as a complete term. It also requires that any fields that are to be used as sort fields be indexed, when the sort is to be performed in the Auxiliary menu. For this reason, the following fields are indexed in MIBIS2, from which the printed bibliographic indexes are produced:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Field label</th>
<th>Field name</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Indexing</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>REC</td>
<td>TITLE</td>
<td>Record number</td>
<td>T 2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>T</td>
<td></td>
<td>Title</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PT</td>
<td>PTITLE</td>
<td>Parallel title(s)</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AU</td>
<td>AUTHOR</td>
<td>Author(s)</td>
<td>T 7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAU</td>
<td>CAUTHOR</td>
<td>Corporate author(s)</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AF</td>
<td>AFFIL</td>
<td>Affiliation</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>OTHINST</td>
<td>Other associated institution(s)</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>Primary descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GDES</td>
<td></td>
<td>Geographic descriptors</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SUB</td>
<td></td>
<td>Broad subject heading</td>
<td>T 5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Similarly, fields REC, TITLE, and PTITLE are indexed in the TITLC database, which is used to print the title catalogue.

The indexing techniques used may be changed if appropriate. The choice of indexing techniques is based on the following considerations:

- Date fields are normally indexed using the date sort (sort 4) in INMAGIC. This format is not suitable for dates in ISO format, because sort 4 requires that the month be expressed as a word or abbreviation (March or Mar). Sort 3, which treats numbers as characters, is used instead.
- Fields with simple values (usually one word), such as status fields, are indexed using sort 2. This sort was chosen over sort 1 or sort 5 so that a code with the same value as a leading article would not be ignored, e.g., the value AN in field CNTRY. Spaces and all punctuation are ignored.
- Some fields are indexed using sort 5. This sort ignores some leading articles, and treats all punctuation and/or single or multiple spaces as a single space.
- The Record number (field REC) is indexed using sort 2. This allows for the numeric sequencing of data if a sort is performed using this field.
- Project number(s) (field PRJNO) and Document number(s) (field DOC) are indexed using sort 6. This technique indexes the term exactly as it is entered. Care must be taken, therefore, when
searching these fields to enter the term exactly as it is stored in the field, with identical punctuation and upper-case letters entered as such. In a command-line search, the field must also be entered between quotes, for example:

\[
\text{GET DOC} = \text{’LC/CAR/G. 126’}
\]

- The choice of term or keyword indexing is based on normal considerations for how the data is to be retrieved, and matches as best as possible the inversion techniques used with MICRO-ISIS. However, discrepancies occur because, in MICRO-ISIS, in some fields, only selected subfields are inverted. Because the data from the subfields are usually combined when kept in INMAGIC, such selectivity is not possible.

XI SEARCHING

Some changes in the handling of data in INMAGIC from the way defined in the Field-by-Field Guide require special caution when searches are requested in the Search menu. For example, the Personal author(s) (field AUTHOR) in INMAGIC are entered along with their role. Therefore, to search for a particular author, a truncated search is required in the user search menu. Enter * after the author’s name when formulating a search, such as:

Jelliffe, D.B. *

or

Jelliffe *

XII LIST OF DIRECTORIES AND FILES USED WITH THE INMAGIC IMPLEMENTATION

The files related to the INMAGIC implementation, which are kept in the INMAGIC directory of the diskette, are indicated below.

- **MIBIS database**
  - data structure: MIBIS.STR
  - database files: MIBIS.DIC, MIBIS.DAT, MIBIS.DTM, MIBIS.DCM, MIBIS.DQM

- **MIBIS2 database**
  - data structure: MIBIS2.STR
  - database files: MIBIS2.DIC, MIBIS2.DAT, MIBIS2.DTM, MIBIS2.DCM, MIBIS2.DQM

- **E-MIBIS2 database**
  - database files: E-MIBIS2.DIC, E-MIBIS2.DAT, E-MIBIS2.DTM, E-MIBIS2.DCM, E-MIBIS2.DQM

- **TITLC database**
  - data structure: TITLC.STR
  - database files: TITLC.DIC, TITLC.DAT, TITLC.DTM, TITLC.DCM, TITLC.DQM

- **E-TITLC database**
  - database files: E-TITLC.DIC, E-TITLC.DAT, E-TITLC.DTM, E-TITLC.DCM, E-TITLC.DQM
### Validation lookup tables

- **bibliographic level**: LEVEL.VAL
- **country codes**: COUNTRY.VAL
- **language codes**: LANGUAGE.VAL
- **broad subject headings**: SUBJECT.VAL
- **record status**: RECDATA.VAL
- **processing status**: PROCSTAT.VAL
- **type of material**: MTYPE.VAL
- **acquisition type**: ATYPE.VAL

### User search menus

- **default search menu**: MIBIS.SMU
- **for author catalogue**: AUTHC.SMU
- **for title catalogue**: TITLC.SMU
- **for corporate author catalogue**: CORPC.SMU
- **for meeting catalogue**: MEETC.SMU
- **for current awareness bulletin**: CAB.SMU
- **for index reports**: RENUMBER.SMU
- **for exchanging records**: EXCHANGE.SMU
- **for purchase orders**: ORDER.SMU
- **for claims for overdue orders**: CLAIM.SMU
- **to change status fields**: STATUS.SMU

### Reports for MIBIS

- **screen output**: M.FMO
- **screen output with abstract**: MA.FMO
- **author catalogue**: AUTHC.FMO
- **corporate author catalogue**: CORPC.FMO
- **meeting catalogue**: MEETC.FMO
- **current awareness bulletin**: CAB.FMO
- **purchase order**: ORDER.FMO
- **claims**: CLAIM.FMO

### Specialized reports for MIBIS

- **title catalogue (select records for TITLC database)**: TITLC1.FMO
- **resquence (for index reports)**: RENUMBER.FMO
- **exchange records in a network**: EXCHANGE.FMO

### Report for TITLC

- **title catalogue**: TITLC2.FMO

### Reports for MIBIS2

- **main bibliographic index**: MAINI.FMO
- **author index**: AUTHI.FMO
- **title index**: TITLI.FMO
- **corporate body index**: CORPI.FMO
- **subject index**: SUBJI.FMO
- **geographic index**: GEOGI.FMO
INDEX

AACR2 4, 7, 131, 133, 134, 152

Abbreviations
  acquisition notes 129
  collation 74
  edition statement 65
  meeting numbers 63
  monographic series part 80
  part statement 76
  provinces 198
  role 50, 100
  states 198

Abstract (field 310) 110, 111
Abstracts bulletins see Printed bibliographic indexes

Accession number(s) (field 413) 117
Accompanying material 85

Acquisition notes (field 517) 129

Acquisition type (field 500) 120

Acquisitions 11, 120-129, 183, 184

Acronyms
  corporate bodies 156, 199-205
  definition 215

Additions to corporate body names 157

Affiliation (field 112) 55-57

African names 137-142

Analytics 7, 8
  definition 28, 215

Anglo-American Cataloguing Rules see AACR2

Any tables 171
  definition 215

Arabic names 142, 143

Articles see Initial articles

Asian names 143-147

Audiovisual material 74, 75

Author catalogues see Printed catalogues — author

Author indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — author

Authority files 10
  computerized 149
    see also Authority records
  computerized — advantages 10
  corporate name see Corporate Name Authority File
    definition 215
  manual 11, 52, 56, 79, 92, 95, 148, 174
  personal author see Personal name authority file
  serial title see Serials Authority File
  subject 108, 112
    see also Thesauri
  supplier see Supplier authority file

Authority record date (field 998 of authority records) 150, 176, 184
Authority record notes (field 997 of authority records) 150, 176, 184
Authority records 10, 11
  MICRO-ISIS 10, 16, 130, 240
  see also Corporate name authority records; Serials authority records; Supplier authority records
Automated authority files see Authority files — computerized; Authority records
Availability (field 162) 90, 91
Bibliographic indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes
Bibliographic level (field 007) 28, 29
Bibliographic level — parent (field 008) 30
Bibliographic levels 7-9, 28-30
definition 215
Bibliographic records
definition 215
Bibliography 219-221
Boolean operators 171, 172
Broad subject heading (field 320) 112
Broader terms 166, 173
definition 215
Call number (field 411) 115
Capitalization
  of corporate body names 164
  of meeting names 62
  of project titles 84
  of serial titles 79, 92, 178
  of titles 40
Cartographic material 74
Catalogues see Printed catalogues
CCF 4, 6
correspondence with present manual 210, 213
CDS-PASCAL 242
  format exits 248, 249
  limitation 54, 57, 61, 102, 249, 252, 255, 262, 263
  see also CHANGE program; CORP program; RENUMB program; REPORT program; SERIAL program
CDS/ISIS (Mini-Micro Version) see MICRO-ISIS
CHANGE program 113, 240, 260
Choice of language see Language of analysis; Language of analysis (field 020)
Cities see Place names
Claims for overdue orders 183, 310, 311
  INMAGIC 334, 335
  MICRO-ISIS 257, 258
Classification schemes 115
Classified material see Restricted material
Codes see Country codes; Currency codes; Language codes; Processing status (field 400); Record status (field 003)
Collation (M/C) (field 130) 73-75
Collections 7, 8
definition 28, 216
INDEX

Common Communication Format see CCF
Compilers 50, 99, 100
Computer hardware see Hardware
Computer software see Software
Computerized authority files see Authority files — computerized; Authority records
Conferences see Meetings
Congresses see Meetings
Cooperative information systems see Information networks
CORP program 151, 255, 256
Corporate author catalogues see Printed catalogues — corporate author
Corporate author(s) (field 111) 51-54
Corporate author(s) — parent (field 211) 101, 102
Corporate bodies 7, 11
   definition 148, 216
   name changes 156
   rules 152-164
   rules, compared with AACR2 153
Corporate body (field 901 of corporate name authority records) 150
Corporate body indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — corporate body
Corporate Name Authority File 11, 52, 53, 56, 57, 59, 60, 102
   printed lists 151, 152, 255, 312-315
   rules 148-164
Corporate name authority records 53, 57, 60, 102, 130, 149-151, 158, 163
   list of fields 150
Country codes 31, 52, 56, 59, 63, 68, 163, 195-197
Country of origin (field 009) 31
Cross references
   definition 216
   in computerized authority files 150, 176
   in manual authority files 131, 148, 174, 178, 180
Currency codes 90, 128
Current awareness bulletins 112, 292-297
   INMAGIC 330, 331
   MICRO-ISIS 251, 252
Data entry
   INMAGIC 327, 328
   MICRO-ISIS 20, 21, 23, 24, 36, 40, 130, 245-247
Data exchange see Information exchange
Database design 3, 11, 12
Databases
   definition 216
Date claimed (field 511) 122
Date of meeting 63, 64
Date of publication/issue — free form (field 122) 69, 70
Date of publication/issue — ISO form (field 123) 71, 72
Date ordered (field 510) 121
Date received (field 512) 123
Date record changed (field 006) 27
Date record entered (field 005) 26
Descriptors 91, 103-109, 165-173
   definition 216
   see also Geographic descriptors (field 302); Local descriptors (field 303); Primary descriptors (field 300); Proposed descriptors (field 304); Secondary descriptors (field 301)
Development Sciences Information System  see DEVSIS
DEVSIS 4
Dimensions 75
Display formats
   MICRO-ISIS 10, 42, 54, 57, 61, 68, 72, 75, 81, 83, 87, 94, 95, 102, 104, 115, 127, 183, 184, 185, 247-250, 252, 254, 258
Displaying information on your screen
   INMAGIC 328, 329
   MICRO-ISIS 247, 248
Dissertations  see Theses
Document number(s) (field 161) 88, 89
Documentalist(s) (field 430) 119
Edition (field 120) 65
Editors 50, 99, 100
Essential fields 19
European names 132-135
Exchanging information  see Information exchange
Field Select table  see Inversion FST; Reformatting FST
Field tags
   definition 216
Fields
   definition 216
   list of 13
   see also Essential fields; Mandatory fields; Repeatable fields; Subfielded fields
Former name(s) (field 904 of corporate name authority records) 150
Former title(s) (field 915 of serials authority records) 176
Free text searching 170, 216
FST  see Inversion FST; Reformatting FST
Geographic codes  see Country codes
Geographic descriptors (field 302) 107
Geographic indexes  see Printed bibliographic indexes — geographic
Global modification
   INMAGIC 337, 338
   MICRO-ISIS 113, 240, 260
Glossary 215-217
Government bodies 159-162
   see also Names of governments
Guidelines for the Building of Authority Files in Development-Information Systems 10, 152
Hardware
   requirements for MICRO-ISIS 5
Headings 7
   definition 216
Heurisko 263, 264
Hyphenated words 40, 164
IDIN 3, 11
IFLA 131, 188
Illustrators 99
Indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes
Indexing see Subject indexing
Indexing techniques for inversion
  INMAGIC 321, 338, 339
  MICRO-ISIS 13, 150
Indicators 210
Information exchange 4-6, 11
  using INMAGIC 336, 337
  using MICRO-ISIS 23, 24, 36, 240, 258-260
Information networks 4, 11, 23-25, 240
Information retrieval 71, 72, 84, 91, 103-105, 170-173, 181
Information systems
definition 216
  see also Multilingual information systems; Stand-alone information systems; Unilingual information systems
Initial articles
in serial titles 178
INMAGIC 319, 338
MICRO-ISIS 40, 41, 92, 93
  see also Triangular brackets
Initials (corporate bodies) see Acronyms — corporate bodies
INMAGIC 5, 318-340
  see also Claims for overdue orders — INMAGIC; Current awareness bulletins — INMAGIC; Data entry — INMAGIC; Displaying information on your screen — INMAGIC; Global modification — INMAGIC; Indexing techniques for inversion — INMAGIC; Information exchange — INMAGIC; Initial articles — INMAGIC; Installation — INMAGIC; MIBIS database — INMAGIC; Multilingual information systems — INMAGIC; Printed bibliographic indexes — INMAGIC; Printed catalogues — INMAGIC; Purchase orders — INMAGIC; Report generation — INMAGIC; Resequencing data — INMAGIC; Sample implementation — INMAGIC; Unilingual information systems — INMAGIC; Validation — INMAGIC
Input sheets 19
  completed — samples 222
  see also Data entry — MICRO-ISIS
Installation
  INMAGIC 320, 321
  MICRO-ISIS 242, 243
Institutions see Corporate bodies
International Development Information Network see IDIN
International Federation of Library Associations and Institutions see IFLA
International Serials Data System see ISDS
International Standard Bibliographic Description see ISBD
Inversion FST 41, 43, 53, 57, 61, 104, 244, 261-263
Inverted files
corporate names 53, 57, 61
definition 216
descriptors 104
MICRO-ISIS 170
title 41

see also Indexing techniques for inversion

ISBD 7
ISBN(s) (field 160) 86, 87
ISDS 177
ISO standards see Standards
ISSN 95
ISSN (field 201) 95, 96
ISSN (field 912 of serials authority records) 176

Items
definition 216
Joint bodies 159
Key title 177

Language
  corporate body name 51, 101, 153-155
  meeting name 62
  name of government 160, 161
  place name 181
  serial title 177, 180
  title 39, 97
Language codes 187
Language of analysis 9, 35, 36, 39, 44, 46-48, 51, 55, 58, 62, 63, 65, 70, 73, 74, 85, 97, 101, 110
  definition 217

see also Languages of the system

Language of analysis (field 020) 35, 36
Language(s) of summaries (field 022) 38
Language(s) of text (field 021) 37
Language(s) of the system 9, 35, 154, 155, 181
Later name(s) (field 905 of corporate name authority records) 150
Later title(s) (field 916 of serials authority records) 176

Leading articles see Initial articles

Local descriptors (field 303) 108
Location(s) (field 410) 114

Loose-leaf publications 73

Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development 10, 165

Main bibliographic indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — main
Main entry headings 7
Mandatory fields 6, 19

Manual for the Preparation of Records in Development-Information Systems 3, 131
  comparison with present manual 206-209

Maps see Cartographic material
Master File Number 22, 24, 32-34

Maximum length of field
  definition 20

Meeting catalogues see Printed catalogues — meeting
INDEX

Meeting(s) (field 114) 62-64
Meetings 62, 153
MFN see Master File Number
MIBIS database
  INMAGIC 321-327
  MICRO-ISIS 243-245
MICRO-ISIS 4-6, 241-269
  see also Authority records — MICRO-ISIS; Claims for overdue orders — MICRO-ISIS; Current awareness bulletins — MICRO-ISIS; Data entry — MICRO-ISIS; Display formats — MICRO-ISIS; Displaying information on your screen — MICRO-ISIS; Global modification — MICRO-ISIS; Hardware — requirements for MICRO-ISIS; Indexing techniques for inversion — MICRO-ISIS; Information exchange — using MICRO-ISIS; Initial articles — MICRO-ISIS; Installation — MICRO-ISIS; Inverted files — MICRO-ISIS; MIBIS database — MICRO-ISIS; Multilingual information systems — MICRO-ISIS; Printed bibliographic indexes — MICRO-ISIS; Printed bibliographic Indexes — MICRO-ISIS; Printed catalogues — MICRO-ISIS; Purchase orders — MICRO-ISIS; Repeatable fields — MICRO-ISIS; Report generation — MICRO-ISIS; Resequencing data — MICRO-ISIS; Sample implementation — MICRO-ISIS; Subfield delimiters — in MICRO-ISIS; Unilingual information systems — MICRO-ISIS

Mini-Micro CDS/ISIS see MICRO-ISIS

Mini-micro CDS/ISIS Reference Manual (Version 2.3) 172, 184
MINISIS 4
Monographic series 9, 11, 78
  definition 217
Monographic series (field 140) 78-81
Monographic series indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — monographic series
Monographs 7, 8
  definition 28, 217
Multilingual information systems 9, 35, 155, 160, 172, 181
  INMAGIC 336
  MICRO-ISIS 247, 259, 260
Multilingual networks 11, 12
  see also Information networks
Multilingual retrieval
  see also Information retrieval
Names of governments 12, 52, 56, 59, 160, 161
  in the language of the government 188-193
Names of territorial authorities see Names of governments
Narrower terms 166, 173
  definition 217
Networks see Information networks; Multilingual networks
Notes (field 150) 85
Number of copies (field 412) 116
Number of copies ordered (field 513) 124
OECD 3, 10, 172
On-line searching see Information retrieval
Optional fields 12, 19
Optional rules 19, 35, 42, 80, 132-134, 154, 155, 160, 161, 181

- 347 -
Optional subfields 11, 51, 55, 58, 62, 64, 75, 78, 92, 101
Order forms see Purchase orders
Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development see OECD
Other associated institution(s) (field 113) 58-61
Other language version(s) (field 903 of corporate name authority records) 150
Other language versions of the item 34
Other language versions of the title 39, 42
Pagination 73, 76, 77, 92
Parallel title(s) (field 101) 42, 43
Parallel titles
definition 217
Parent items 7, 30, 32, 97, 99, 101
Part statement (field 131) 76, 77
Participating centre acronym (field 001) 23
Participating centre record number (field 002) 24
PASCAL see CDS-PASCAL
Periodicals see Serials
Periods see Punctuation
Personal author(s) (field 110) 49, 50
Personal author(s) — parent (field 210) 99, 100
Personal authors 99
rules 131-147
Personal name authority file 49, 99, 131
Place names 12, 163
rules 181
Portuguese names 135
Price (field 516) 128
Primary descriptors (field 300) 103-105
Print formats see Display formats
Printed bibliographic indexes
author 301
corporate body 303
geographic 169, 307
INMAGIC 331-334
main 298-300
MICRO-ISIS 253-255, 298-307
monographic series 80
place 181
subject 103, 169, 304-306
title 302
Printed catalogues
author 270-276
corporate author 285-288
INMAGIC 330, 331
meeting 289-291
MICRO-ISIS 251, 252, 270-291
title 277-284
Printed outputs see Claims for overdue orders; Corporate Name Authority File — printed lists;
Current awareness bulletins; Display formats — MICRO-ISIS; Printed bibliographic indexes;
Printed catalogues; Purchase orders; Serials Authority File — printed lists; Supplier authority
file — printed lists
Processing status (field 400) 113
Programs see CDS-PASCAL; CHANGE program; CORP program; RENUMB program; REPORT
program; SERIAL program
Project numbers 84
Project(s) (field 142) 84
Proposed descriptors (field 304) 109
Provinces
abbreviations 198
as names of governments 160, 161
in place names 182
Publisher (field 121) 66-68
Punctuation
before monographic series part 81
before parallel titles 42
before publisher 68
between descriptor fields 104
in collation 74, 75
in corporate body names 52, 164
in ISBN 87
in meeting names 63
in monographic series 80
in notes 85, 129
in part statement 77
in project numbers 84
in serial titles 80, 92
in thesis field 83
in titles 40
Purchase orders 126, 183-185, 308, 309
INMAGIC 334, 335
MICRO-ISIS 257, 258
Record number of parent (field 010) 32
Record number(s) of other language version(s) (field 012) 34
Record number(s) of part(s) (field 011) 33
Record status (field 003) 25
Record type (field 999) 130, 150, 176, 184
Reformatting FST 23, 24, 36, 210, 240, 244, 254, 258-260
Related terms 166, 173
RENUMB program 253
Repeatable fields
definition 19, 217
in MICRO-ISIS 20
Report generation
INMAGIC 329-335
MICRO-ISIS 250-258
Report numbers  see  Document number(s) (field 161)
REPORT program  251, 252, 254, 257
Reports  see  Claims for overdue orders; Corporate Name Authority File — printed lists; Current awareness bulletins; Printed bibliographic indexes; Printed catalogues; Purchase orders; Serials Authority File — printed lists; Supplier authority file — printed lists
Reprints  73, 78, 85
Requester(s) (field 514)  125
Resequencing data
    INMAGIC  331, 332
    MICRO-ISIS  253, 254
Restricted material  90
Retrieval  see  Information retrieval
Right truncation  171
Role
    institution  58-60
    personal author  49, 50, 100
Romanization  see  Transliteration
SAF  see  Serials Authority File
Sample implementation
    INMAGIC  318-340
    MICRO-ISIS  241-317
Sample input sheets  17, 18
    completed  222-239
Sample printed outputs  269-317
Searching  see  Information retrieval
Secondary descriptors (field 301)  106
See also other language edition(s) (field 914 of serials authority records)  176
See also references  see  Cross references
See reference(s) (field 902 of corporate name authority records)  150
See reference(s) (field 913 of serials authority records)  176
See references  see  Cross references
Segments  210
Seminars  see  Meetings
SERIAL program  177, 256
Serial title (field 911 of serials authority records)  176
Serial titles
    rules  177-180
Serials  8, 9, 92
    definition  28, 174, 217
    see also  Monographic series; Monographic series (field 140); Serial titles; Title of serial (field 200)
Serials Authority File  11, 78-81, 92-96
    printed lists  177, 256, 316
    rules  175-180
Serials authority records  80, 93-95, 130, 175
    list of fields  176
Series  see  Monographic series; Monographic series (field 140)
Shelf numbers  115
Software
  requirements for a bibliographic system 5
  see also CDS-PASCAL; IN MAGIC; MICRO-ISIS; MINISIS
Spanish names 136, 137
Stand-alone information systems 11, 12, 160
Standards
  bibliographic information interchange 5
  calendar dates 64, 71
  country codes 195
  currency codes 90
  language codes 187
  province codes 198
  transliteration 40, 154
Statement of responsibility 7
States
  abbreviations 198
  as names of governments 160, 161
  in place names 182
Status codes see Processing status (field 400); Record status (field 003)
Subfield delimiters
  in MICRO-ISIS 20
Subfielded fields
  definition 20, 218
Subfields
  definition 217
Subject classification 115
Subject headings see Broad subject heading (field 320); Printed bibliographic indexes — subject
Subject indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — subject
Subject indexing 10, 165-169
  see also Descriptors
Subject retrieval see Information retrieval
Subordinate bodies 52, 56, 59, 153, 157, 158
  definition 218
Supplier (field 515) 126, 127
Supplier authority code (field 921 of supplier authority records) 184
Supplier authority file 11, 126
  printed lists 256, 317
Supplier authority records 127, 130, 184
  list of fields 184
Supplier name and address (field 922 of supplier authority records) 184
Territorial authorities see Names of governments
Thesauri 10, 11, 103, 106, 107, 115, 165, 172
  see also Macrothesaurus for Information Processing in the Field of Economic and Social Development
Theses 69, 82
Thesis (field 141) 82, 83
Title (field 100) 39-41
Title catalogues see Printed catalogues — title
Title indexes see Printed bibliographic indexes — title
Title of parent (M/C) (field 202) 97, 98
Title of serial (field 200) 92-94
Top terms 166
Towns see Place names
Translated title — English (field 102) 44, 45
Translated title — French (field 103) 46
Translated title — other language (field 105) 48
Translated title — Spanish (field 104) 47
Translations 85
Translators 99
Transliteration
  of corporate body names 154
  of titles 40
  standards for 40
Triangular brackets 40, 41, 92, 93, 104, 108, 109, 179, 255
Type of material (field 420) 118
Unilingual information systems 9, 35, 154, 160, 181
  INMAGIC 336
  MICRO-ISIS 259, 260
Validation
  INMAGIC 328
Variant forms of name see Cross references
Volume numbers 73, 76, 80, 92
Worksheets see Data entry — MICRO-ISIS; Input sheets
Workshops see Meetings
**Abstract** This publication provides guidelines for creating and maintaining a bibliographic information system using microcomputers. It is a generalized manual for users ranging from those managing stand-alone systems in libraries or documentation centres to participants in information networks. The manual contains a database design using Mini-micro CDS/ISIS as the example software. The main part is a field-by-field guide with rules for the selection and entry of data in the proposed record structure. Numerous annexes include guidelines for building corporate name and serials authority files, guidelines for subject analysis and retrieval, a guide for acquisitions applications, data exchange procedures in a network, a table showing the correspondence with the Common Communication Format, and details on implementations using Mini-micro CDS/ISIS and INMAGIC-PLUS, with sample outputs. A diskette containing the Mini-micro CDS/ISIS and INMAGIC-PLUS record structures and supporting files, as well as a sample database, is included.

**Résumé** Ce document contient des lignes directrices pour la création et l'entretien d'un système d'information bibliographique sur micro-ordinateur. C'est un manuel général destiné tant à l'utilisateur gérant un système individuel en bibliothèque ou un centre de documentation qu'au membre d'un réseau d'information. Il contient un modèle de base de données avec logiciel Mini-micro CDS/ISIS. Le corps du document est un guide par zone contenant des règles de sélection et d'entrée des données dans la structure d'enregistrement proposée. Dans les annexes, on trouve des directives pour constituer des fichiers d’autorité des noms de collectivités et des périodiques, des grandes lignes à suivre pour l’analyse par sujet et le repérage, un système d’acquisition, des procédés d’échange des données en réseau, un tableau montrant la correspondance avec le format commun de communication et des détails sur les applications du Mini-micro CDS/ISIS et de INMAGIC-PLUS, ainsi que des échantillons de sorties. La disquette insérée dans le guide comporte les structures d’enregistrement Mini-micro CDS/ISIS et INMAGIC-PLUS et leurs fichiers d’accompagnement, de même qu’un modèle de base de données.

**Resumen** Esta publicación proporciona orientación para la creación y mantenimiento de un sistema de información bibliográfica por medio del uso de microcomputadores. Se trata de un manual general para usuarios que administran sistemas autónomos en bibliotecas o en centros de documentación como también para los participantes en redes de información. El manual contiene el diseño de una base de datos que utiliza Mini-micro CDS/ISIS como software a manera de ejemplo. La parte principal es una guía por campos con reglas para la selección e ingreso de datos en la estructura propuesta del registro. Varios anexos incluyen guías para construir archivos de autoridad para nombres de empresas y para títulos de publicaciones periódicas, guías para análisis y búsqueda, una guía para el empleo de adquisiciones, procedimientos de intercambio de información en una red, una tabla que indica la correspondencia con el Formato de Comunicación Común (CCF) y los detalles sobre su implementación usando Mini-micro CDS/ISIS e INMAGIC-PLUS, con muestreo de resultados. Se incluye un disquete que contiene las estructuras de registro de Mini-micro CDS/ISIS y de INMAGIC-PLUS. Asimismo, se incluyen archivos de apoyo y una muestra de una base de datos.
About the Institution

The International Development Research Centre (IDRC) is a public corporation created by the Parliament of Canada in 1970 to support technical and policy research to help meet the needs of developing countries. The Centre is active in the fields of environment and natural resources, social sciences, health sciences, and information sciences and systems. Regional offices are located in Africa, Asia, Latin America, and the Middle East.

About the Publisher

IDRC Books publishes research results and scholarly studies on global and regional issues related to sustainable and equitable development. As a specialist in development literature, IDRC Books contributes to the body of knowledge on these issues to further the cause of global understanding and equity. IDRC publications are sold through its head office in Ottawa, Canada, as well as by IDRC's agents and distributors around the world.
The MIBIS Manual — Second Edition

Preparing records in microcomputer-based bibliographic information systems

“A great deal of practical experience has gone into the compilation of this manual, which deserves to become a standard work in its field.”

Peter Vickers, The Information Partnership, UK
in Program: Automated Library and Information Systems

The MIBIS Manual provides detailed instructions on how to build and run a bibliographic information system using a personal computer. Using UNESCO's CDS/ISIS as the example software, it offers a proven model and shows how that model can be adapted for INMAGIC Plus.

Using The MIBIS Manual, libraries and documentation centres can tailor their bibliographic information system to the needs of their users and the nature of their collection, while ensuring that the system they create conforms to major international standards.

With information on:

- Creating a bilingual or multilingual system
- Running the system within a network and using networks to share bibliographic records with other libraries
- Creating personal and corporate name authority files
- Managing acquisitions fields

This new, fully updated edition incorporates the latest features of CDS/ISIS and INMAGIC Plus, a new search interface for CDS/ISIS, and an improved display format for bibliographic records.

Included with this volume: A 3.5-inch disk containing a sample database, record structures, and supporting files for UNESCO's CDS/ISIS as well as INMAGIC Plus.